

GENERAL INDEX

by MURIEL MOYLE

NOTES

- (1) Articles (such as 'the', 'al-', etc.) occurring at the beginning of an entry, and prefixes (such as 'de', 'van', etc.) are ignored in the alphabetical sequence. Saints appear among all letters of the alphabet according to their proper names. Styles such as Mr, Dr, if occurring in book titles or phrases, are ignored; if with proper names, printed following them.
- (2) The various parts of hyphenated words are treated as separate words in the alphabetical sequence. It should be remembered that, in accordance with the conventions adopted, some Chinese proper names are written as separate syllables while others are written as one word.
- (3) In the arrangement of Chinese words, Chh- and Hs- follow normal alphabetical sequence, and *ü* is treated as equivalent to *u*.
- (4) References to footnotes are not given except for certain special subjects with which the text does not deal. They are indicated by brackets containing the superscript letter of the footnote.
- (5) Explanatory words in brackets indicating fields of work are added for Chinese scientific and technological persons (and occasionally for some of other cultures), but not for political or military figures (except kings and princes).

- A-Chhiu A-Kung (Nakhi chief, + 1494 to + 1553), 200 (c)
- A-Chia A-Tê (Nakhi chief, fl. + 1382), 200
- A-Ni-Ko (Nepalese metal-founder and decorator), 75 (i)
- A-Tsung A-Liang (Nakhi chieftain, + 1252), 199
- d'Abano, Pietro (+ 1300), 558 (b)
- Abbasid caliphate, 497
- Abbot's Bridge, Bury St Edmunds, 175
- Abel, Sir Westcott (1), 382
- Abhaya-wewa, 370
- Abor tribe. *See* Tribal peoples
- Aborigines, of Australia, 536 ff.
- Abundance of Jottings by Old Mr (Li) Chieh-An. *See* *Chieh An Lao Jen Man Pi*
- Abyssinia, 504
- An Account of Cambodia. *See* *Fu-Nan Chuan*
- Account of Foreign Countries contemporary with Wu. *See* *Wu Shih Wai Kuo Chuan*
- Account of the Liu-Chhiu Islands. *See* *Liu-Chhiu Kuo Chih Lüeh*
- An Account of the Palaces and Public Buildings of the Ming Dynasty. *See* *Ming Kung Shih*
- Achilles Tatius (+ 3rd-century writer), 615 (f)
- Acoustics, 435 (b)
- Acropolis, 72 (b)
- Action and reaction, 634 (c)
- Actium, battle of, 442
- Adams, Will (shipwright in Japan, c. + 1610), 437
- Adda river, 377
- Aden, 490-1, 496 ff., 582
- Aden, Gulf of, 494
- Admirals' titles
- Embattled ships Commander. *See* Yang Phu
- Fighting-ship Commander. *See* Marquis Yen
- Prancing-Dragon Admiral. *See* Wang Chün
- Three-Jewel Commissioner. *See* Chêng Ho
- Wave-subduing Commander. *See* Lu Po-Tê and Ma Yuan
- Admiralty Islands, 611 (h)
- Adobe, 40, 43, 133
- Adriatic, ships, 613, 620 (f)
- Adulis, 444
- Advisory Discourse on Naval Warfare. *See* *Shui Chan I Hsiang Lun*
- Adze anchor. *See* Anchors
- Aelfric (c. + 1000), 438
- Aerial non-floating out-riggers, 385
- Aerodynamics, and sailing-ships, 592, 597, 603, 616, 625, 698
- Aerofoil, 592
- Aesthetics, 116
- Afforestation, 240, 253
- Afghanistan, 189
- Africa, 39, 118, 151, 611
- first printed map of, 501 (c)
- gold from, 521
- non-indigenous settlement in, 494
- search for the southern passage, 504
- voyages to. *See* Voyages and expedition

- Africa, East, 490, 609
 archaeological research in, 497–8
 China and, 494 ff.
 Portuguese in, 506, 514, 528
- Africa, North, 521 (c)
- Africa, South, 529, 538 (d)
 maps of, 499, 500–1
- Africa, West, Portuguese exploration of, 504 ff.,
 514, 517, 557, 567
- After-castle, 446
- Agatharchos of Samos (– 5th-century painter),
 115 (b)
- Agoraphobia, 527
- Agriculture, 91 (a), 212, 218, 224–5, 246, 251, 260–
 1, 264–5, 267, 476, 524, 546
- Agulhas (Cape), 506
- al-Ahsā', 490
 siege of, 516 (b)
- Ahsan al-Taqāsim fi Ma'rifat al-Aqālīm* (The best
 Divisions for the Knowledge of the Climates),
 652
- Ai-Lao Country, 201
- Ai-Lao tribes. *See* Tribal peoples
- Ai Ti. *See* Liu Hsin
- Aigues-mortes, 72 (c), 556
- Ainu. *See* Tribal peoples
- Aircraft wings, anti-stalling slots in, 656
- Ajanta cave-temples, 171 (g), 474 (c)
- Ajanta ship, 454–5, 602, 606, 635
- Akama-no-Miya shrine, scroll-paintings in, 647,
 648 (a)
- Alagakkonāra (King of Ceylon, + 1410), 515–16
- Alaric (Gothic king, fl. + 410), 55 (d)
- Alaska, 540
- Alberti, L. B. (architect, + 1404 to + 1472), 358,
 664
- de Albuquerque, Afonso (+ 1507), 506, 514–15,
 518 (d), 535
- Alburnus lucidus* (bleak-fish), 677
- Alchemy, 140, 531
 'Alchemy Tower', 139–40
- d'Alenquer, Pero (pilot of da Gama's flag-ship),
 513
- Aleutian Islands, 548 (b)
- Alexander, William (painter, 1801), 424
- Alexander Romance, 56–7, 674
- Alexander the Great, 56–7, 660–1
- Alexandri Minoritae Apocalypsis Explicata*, 636 (k)
- Alexandria, 499, 519
 Pharos of, 661
- Alfalfa, 520 (e)
- Alfonso X (King of Castile), 581
- Algarve, 503–4
- Algebra, 325
- Alidades, 568
- Aljubarrota, battle of, 503
- Allom, T. & Pellé, C., 364
- Almaid Island, 489 (c)
- de Almeida, Francisco (+ 1510), 514–15, 535
- Almoners-General. *See* I Jen
- Almoravid dynasty, 475
- Aloes, 496, 530
- Alpaca, 475
- Alps, 23, 166
- Als boat, 388
- Altair, 583
- Altar of Heaven (Thien Than), 122 (a), 129
- Altars of Heaven and Earth, 543 (b)
- Altazimuth sighting-tubes, 332
- Althiburus mosaic, 437–8
- Altitude-measurement, 557, 563 (b), 566–7, 573,
 575–6
 in *chih* and *chio*, 567, 570
 in *išba* and *zam*, 570, 571
- Álvares, Jorge (+ 1513), 507
- Ama clan. *See* Tribal peoples
- Amazons (Nü-Kuo), 541
- Amban Ganga (River), 370–1, 373
- Amber, trade routes of, 2 (f)
- 'Ambi-Navigator or Vibrator', 624
- Ameinocles (– 7th-century naval architect),
 608 (e)
- Amenemhät III (Egyptian pharaoh), 365 (f)
- America, 485, 531, 549, 552–3
 discovery of, 504, 513 (d), 520, 533, 540, 610,
 637
 possible pre-Columbian contacts with, 475,
 513 (d), 540 ff.
 voyages and expeditions to. *See* Voyages and
 expeditions
- America, Central, 541 ff.
 cultural similarities with East and South-east
 Asia, 542 ff.
 and origin of the sailing-raft, 551
- America, North, 14 (a)
 sails, 617 (a)
- America, South, 184, 190, 547
- 'America' (racing yacht), 419
- American Gloucester schooners, 592 (c)
- American–Polynesian contact, 545 (f)
- Amerindians, 167 (e), 184, 190 (a), 394 (c), 541 ff.,
 551
 architecture, 543
 chronology, 547 (a)
- Amida (Buddha), 89, 455
- Amoy, 159
 boats, 439 (a), 614
- Amphibious vehicles, 421 (b)
- Amphisbaena, 543
- Amphora Mountain (Hu Ling Shan), 289 (d)
- Amu Darya (River), pontoon bridge, 161
- Amulets, 545
- An-chhing, 105
- An-Chi Chhiao, 178–9, 181
- An-hsi, 17–18, 28, 49
- An-Lan So Chhiao, 192
- An Lu-Shan (Thang general and rebel), 275 (e),
 311 (a)
- An Nan (+ 5th-century road-builder), 31
- An-Shan, 314
- An-shan Chen, 316
- An-ting, 16
- Analytical Dictionary of Characters. *See* *Shuo*
Wên Chieh Tzu

INDEX

833

- Anaphoric water-clock. *See* Clepsydra
 Anatomy, 68 (i), 549 (b)
 Anchor weights, 160, 162 (b)
 Anchors, 404–5, 411, 415, 446, 448, 461, 485, 645, 656–9
 adze, 657–8
 bronze age, 657
 Darnforth, 658
 of Liang-shan ship, 479
 Mediterranean, 657
 metal, 657
 sea-anchors, 607 (c)
 ‘stick-in-the mud’, 660
 ‘stockless’, 658, 698
 technical terms, 657 ff.
 Ancient buildings, restoration and protection of, 60 (b)
 Andean Indians, 531
 Andes, 2
 Āndhra dynasty, 367
 coins of, 472 (h)
 Anfēng Thang, 271, 373
 Ang. *See* Lever arms
 Angkor Thom, 309 (f)
 ship bas-reliefs, 450, 460, 602, 648, 657–8
 Angle-oar. *See* Oars
 Angola, 506, 517
 Anhui, 133, 271, 453
 Anicut. *See* Weirs
 Animal cycle, 544 (a)
 Animal husbandry, 520
 Anise, 245
 Annam, 24, 254, 442–3
 sailing-craft, 385 (b), 393 (c), 601, 620, 665
 tombs, 443
 Annamese rebellion, 27, 303
 Antarctica, 501–2, 540, 587
 Anthemius of Tralles (architect, fl. + 537), 179
 Anthropology, 118, 121
 Anti-Atlas mountains, 505
 Anti-hogging trusses. *See* Trusses
 Anti-maritime party, 478–9, 482, 484, 489 (a), 490–1, 524–5, 526
 Antilles, 617
 Antonine Itinerary, 27
 Antonine Wall, 15
 Antwerp, siege of, 684
 Anurādhapura, 370
 Anyang, 271
 excavations at, 122–3
 Ao, 43
 Ao Granary, 19, 270 (a)
 Aosta, 168
 Aoyama Sadao (?), 217
 Apianus, Petrus (+ 16th-century mathematician and astronomer), 579–80
 Appalachian Mountains, bridges in, 208 (e)
 Appian Way, 15 (b), 30
 Aqueducts, 284 (d), 376 (d)
 Indian, 368
 Italian, 377
 Roman, 145, 168
 Arabia, 490, 522, 530
 Arabian Gulf, 528
 Arabic astronomy, 573
 Arabic–Byzantine contacts, 698
 Arabic geographers, 502–3, 504, 585
 Arabs, 56, 108, 115 (b), 118, 169 (c), 453, 490, 499, 504, 514, 612, 662, 698
 in Africa, 494, 499, 508, 514
 navigation, 557–8, 567–8, 570, 576, 581, 583–4, 590
 ships, 389, 475, 486, 510, 609 (e), 612, 652, 696
 trade, 518–19, 652
 Aral Sea, 367
 Aratus (–3rd century), 554 (f), 563 (b)
 Arch bridges. *See* Bridges
 Arch linings, 169, 173 (a), 178 (a)
 Archaeology, 87–8, 93, 128, 135, 158, 341, 366, 382, 443
 East Africa, 497
 Japan, 553
 Lungshan culture, 120
 Sarawak, 461 (h)
 Archers, 440, 445–6, 469, 503, 685
 Arches, 65, 146 ff., 167
 barrel vault, 139
 ‘caitya’-, 167 (d)
 complete circle, 170
 ‘flatness’ of, 180, 182–3
 invention of, 167
 and the Mayas, 546 (d)
 ogival, 171 (g)
 pointed, 146–7, 171
 relative unimportance of, in Chinese building technology, 167 (h)
 segmental, 104, 175, 179 ff.
 semicircular, 146–7, 168, 171, 175, 179 ff.
 spandrelled, 178–9, 182 (a)
 Archimedean screw, 666
 ‘Archimedes’ (screw steamer), 419
 Architectural drawings, 80, 85, 88–9, 95, 105 ff.
 Western, 108 ff.
 Architecture, 39, 58 ff., 87, 122, 391
 Amerindian, 543, 546
 Danish, 102
 defensive. *See* Fortifications
 domestic, 59, 61 ff., 69, 70 (d), 74, 132 ff.
 Dutch, 102
 French, 40, 103
 Gothic, 61, 94, 102, 171 (g)
 Greek, 65, 90, 94, 100 (a), 102, 108, 167
 Japanese, 67, 70, 89 (e), 93 (c), 95 (c), 101, 128, 129 (i), 130 (b)
 Maya, 90 (b)
 public, 69
 Roman, 179
 technical terms, 38–9, 59, 67–8, 80, 82 ff., 92 ff., 125
 Western and Chinese contrasted, 97
Architecture Hydraulique (de Bélidor), 339
 Arcs. *See* Sailing arcs
 Arcuballistae, 203, 552, 688
 Argonauts, 608 (e)

- Arguim, 521–2
 ‘factory’ at, 517 (b)
 Arguim, Gulf of, 514
 Arikamedu, Roman–Syrian factory at, 616 (a)
 Aristotle, 608, 673
 Arithmetical Classic of the Gnomon and the
 Circular Paths of Heaven. *See* *Chou Pei Suan
 Ching*
 Armaments, European superiority of, in post-
 Renaissance times, 534
 Armenia, 28
 Armillary ring, 568
 Armillary sphere, 567
 demonstrational, 585–6
 Armour, 546 (k)
 Armour-plating, in warships, 476, 664, 682 ff.,
 689, 697
 Arno canal, 358, 376
 Arretine pottery, 519 (b)
 ‘Arrow Pursuit Vessel’, 406
 Arrows with cords attached, for line-throwing,
 186–7, 205 (b)
 Arsensals, 214
 Arsinoe, 357
 Art and artists, 106, 118–19
 Amerindian, 543–4
 Gandhāra, 137
 religious, 546
 Artemon, 405, 455, 458, 474, 591
 Arthasāstra, 3, 5 (b), 367
 Articulated boats, 421, 431 ff., 698
 Articulated locomotive. *See* Locomotives
 Artificers’ Record, chapter of the *Chou Li*, q.v.
 Artificial pearls. *See* Pearls
 Artificial water-ways. *See* Canals
 Artisans, 84, 85 (a), 89, 160, 277, 328, 409, 480
 in Baghdad, 362
 in Treasure-ship crews, 507 (b), 565 (i)
 Ashanti, 505
 Asoka (king of India, –3rd century), 370, 456,
 617
 Assam, 146, 186, 189
 ‘Assassins’, 335
 Assemblies
 of literati (+36), 37
 scientific (+44), 37
 Assyria, 90
 boats in bas-reliefs, 386–7
 irrigation works, 356, 366 (d)
 Astrographic expedition (+724), 567
 Astrolabe, 557–8, 567–8, 569 (e), 572, 576 (d),
 579 ff.
 Astrology, 435 (b), 560 ff.
 Astrology (and Astronomy) of (the People in) the
 Midst of the Sea. *See* *Hai Chung Chan*
 Astronomical observations, and navigation, 554–5
 Astronomical tables, 559
 Astronomy, and astronomers, 120, 129, 435 (b),
 491, 560, 562, 577 ff., 585
 Egyptian, 555 (a)
 Arabic, 573
 Athenaeus, 666
 Athenian galley, 626
 Athenian galley lamp, 435
 Atlantic Ocean, 485, 502, 558
 winds and currents, 476, 511, 513, 557
 Attiret, Jean-Denis (Wang Chih-Chhêng, +1702
 to +1768), 111 (c)
 Aude-Garonne canal, 353 (d)
 Audemard, Capt., 383, 427, 597, 601
 Augustus (*fl.* –31), 34
 Australia, 502, 586–7
 aborigines of, 536 ff.
 China and, 486, 536 ff.
 Austrian lakes, boats of, 621
 Automobile, 570 (c)
 Avignon, bridge at, 32 (c), 179 (a), 181
 Avocado, 475
 Axial rudder. *See* Rudders, Stern-post
 Axonometric projection, 114 (c)
 Axumite kingdom of Ethiopia, 444
 Ayut’ia, 309 (f)
 Azania, 514
 Azimuth, 555, 564, 576, 583
 Azores, 505, 511, 552
 Aztec calendars, 544
 Aztecs, 447 (a), 540, 542
 Baalbek, temple at, 153 (c)
 Babylonia, 162, 247 (f), 365, 374
 Bachhofer, L. (I), 113
 Back-staff, 559
 Bacon, Roger (+1214 to +1292), 296
 Bactria, 137
Baculum. *See* Jacob’s Staff
 Bagamoyo, pillar tomb near, 497
 Bage, Charles (architect, +1752 to 1822), 104
 Baghdad, 73 (b), 361–2, 366
 Baghdad MS. (+1237), showing axial rudder, 651
 Bahia culture, 546 (l)
 Bahmani sultans, 367, 506
 Baḥr Yūsuf, regulator sluices on, 356 (h), 365 (f)
 Bajjini, 538
 Bailers, 384, 389 (e)
 Bajun Islands, 498
 Baker, Matthew (+16th-century shipwright),
 413 (i), 418
 Balance-board, 384–5
Balestilha (Portuguese cross-staff), 557
 Bali, 536, 582
Balístinha do mouro. *See* Kamāl
 Ball-game, Amerindian, 543 (h), 546 (h)
Ballad of Mêng Chang Nü, 42 (d), 53 (a)
Ballad of Salman and Morolf (+1190), 673
 Baltic Sea, 472–3
 Bamboo, 21, 90, 134
 and architecture, 391
 cables, 161, 185, 191, 328, 415
 gabions, 174, 177, 295 (g), 321 ff., 331, 339–40, 342
 pipe-lines, 376 (d)
 plaited strips of, 191, 339
 used for sails in Chinese ships, 597, 599, 604
 and ship-building, 389, 391, 394, 396, 695
 in wall-building, 39

- Banteai-Chmar, bas-reliefs of, 450
Barbala plicata, 675
 Barbarian bed. *See* *Hu chhuang*
 Barbarians, relations with, 533, 584
 Barbosa, Duarte (c. 1520), 468 (a)
 Barbour, G. B., 224
Barca, 509, 609 (i)
 Barcelona, 485
Barcos rabêlos, 607, 636 (i)
 Barges, 230, 269, 302, 305, 351
 sailing-, 410, 526
Barinho, 619 (d)
 Barometer, 559
 Barques, 513, 606
 Barrel-vault. *See* Vault
 de Barros, João, 515
 Barrow, John (fl. +1793), 33 (a), 50, 174, 364, 423 (a)
 Bas-reliefs. *See* Reliefs
 Basin-boat. *See* Kettle-boat
 Basra, 34, 486
 Batang, 386
 Bathyscaphe, 674 (c)
 Battens, 592 (c), 595 ff., 599, 613, 697
 of bamboo, 597, 604
 Battering-ram, 680, 690 (g)
 Battles
 of Actium, 442
 of Aljubarrota, 503
 ‘Battle on the Bridge’, 149
 Chemulpo, 683
 of Dan-no-Ura, 647–8
 Fusan Sound, 683
 of Huang-thien-tang, 683 (b), 693 (a)
 of Lepanto, 627 (a)
 naval, 440 ff., 445, 477
 of the Red Cliff, 449
 of the Talas River, 362
 of Thu-mu, 526
 of Tshai-shih, 416 (b)
 of Yai-shan, 667
 on the Yangtze, 476
 Bawean Island canoes, 435 (e)
 Bayan (general of Khubilai Khan), 313
 Bayeux tapestry, 389, 472, 636, 648 (b), 657 (e)
 Bayon temple, Angkor Thom, reliefs of ships at.
 See Angkor Thom
 Bayonne, 609
 Beacons, 35, 37, 661
 Beam bridges. *See* Bridges
 Bean-Garden Miscellany. *See* *Shu Yuan Tsa Chi*
 Bearing-and-distance system, 556
 Beating to windward. *See* Sailing to windward
 Beaton, C. (1), 163
 Beaufoy, Col. (+1780), 625
 Bed-load, 231, 293 (c), 335
 Bedford Level, 308
 Bedini, S. A., 570
 Bedroom Scene (painting), 116
 Beehive huts, 121
 in fresco painting of ship, 455
 Begram, glass of, 519 (b)
 Behaim, Martin (c. +1483), 558 (b), 586
 Behring, Vitus (+1725), 542 (f)
Beitidss (spar), 615 (c)
 Belem, Tower of, 486
 Belgium, font sculptures in, 637
 de Béliidor, B. F. (+18th-century engineer),
 215 (a), 338, 339 (g), 660
 Bell, John, of Antermony (Scottish physician in
 the Russian service, fl. +1715), 263 (c)
 Bellows, 673
 Bells, metal, 546 (f)
 Bend-erosion, 236, 250
 ‘The Bends’, 672 (d)
 Bengal, 367, 386, 567
 embassies to, 491
 malar panshi ship of, 447, 456
 voyages to, 490
 Bentham, Sir Samuel (+1757 to 1831), 420–1
 Bentham, Lady, 420–1
 Benzoin, 530
 Berbera, 494–5
 Bereguardo canal, 358
 Berkeley, Bishop (fl. +1709), 117
 Bermuda rig. *See* Sails, ‘leg-of-mutton’
 Bernard, W. D., 141, 142 (c)
 Bernoulli, Daniel (mathematician (hydrodynamics), +1750), 625
 Beruwala, 516
 The Best Designs in Armament Technology. *See*
 Wu Pei Chih Shêng
 Best Divisions for the Knowledge of the Climates.
 See *Ahsan al-Taqāsīm fī Ma’rifat al-Aqālim*
 Betel nut tree, 532
 Beveridge, W. M. (1), 118
 Bezoar, 531 (d)
 Bhoja (dynasty), 367
 Bhoja of Dhara (Rājā, c. +1050), 402 (f)
 Bhoja Narapati, 402 (f)
 Bhojpur Lake, 367
 Bhutan, 166, 206
 Bhuvaneka Bāhu V (King of Ceylon), 516
 Bidone, Giorgio (+1731 to 1839), 371 (b)
 Bielenstein, H. (2), 241
 Bifid stems and sterns, 384, 389 (e), 681
al-Bilistī (cross-staff), 574
 Biographies of Outstanding Monks. *See* *Kao*
 Sêng Chuan
 Biological inch, 68 (i)
 Bipod masts. *See* Masts
 Birds, role of, in early navigation, 453 (e), 555
 ‘Birds’-beak’ ends, on corbel brackets, 97
 Birds’ nests (edible), 537
 al-Birūnī, Abū al-Raiḥān (geographer, +11th
 century), 502, 579
 Bishop, C. W. (7), 436
Bisi-kottuwa (intake-tower, or valve-tower), 372,
 373 (a)
 Bismarck Archipelago, 612 (a)
 de Bisschop, E. & Tatibouët, M., 485 (f)
 Black Death, 530
 Blaeu’s *Atlas*, 205, 208
 de la Blanchère, M. R., 357, 365

836

Blast-furnaces, 151 (h)
 Bleak-fish, 677
 'Block frieze', 116 (e)
 'Blockage' (*thung sai*), 268–9
 Blue Nile, 501
 Boarding technique, of naval combat, 442, 449, 693
 Boat-burials, 388 (a), 389 (e)
 Boat-races, 436, 696
 Boats, 25–6, 311, 379
 articulated, 421, 431 ff., 698
 crooked-bow, 430–1
 crooked-stern, 430–1
 double-hulled. *See* Double-hulled craft
 dugout, 450–1
 fishing-, 422
 metal, 665
 paddle-wheel. *See* Paddle-wheel boats
 pictogram for, 396
 salt-, 422, 430, 663
 for travelling officials, 412, 425, 600, 626
 used in closing of dyke breaches, 343
 Boçion, François (painter, 1828–90), 616 (f)
 Bod-Yul. *See* Tibet
 Boerschmann, E., 58, 60, 163
 Bojador (cape), 505
 Bollène, 181
 Bombards, 428, 508, 516 (b)
 Bombs, 692
 Bonatz, P. & Leonhardt, F., 181
 Bonding methods (brick- and stone-work), 40, 168–9, 322, 339
 Book of Changes. *See* *I Ching*
 Book of the Countries. *See* *Kitāb al-Buldān*
 Book of Fan Shêng-Chih on Agriculture. *See* *Fan Shêng-Chih Shu*
 Book of (the prince of) Huai Nan. *See* *Huai Nan Tzu*
 Book of Instructions on the Principles of Navigation. *See* *Kitāb al-Fawā'id* . . .
 Book of Master Chuang. *See* *Chuang Tzu*
 Book of Master Kuan Yin. *See* *Kuan Yin Tzu*
 Book of Master Lieh. *See* *Lieh Tzu*
 Book of Master Mêng. *See* *Mêng Tzu*
 Book of Master Mo. *See* *Mo Tzu*
 Book of Master Shen. *See* *Shen Tzu*
 Book of Master Su. *See* *Su Tzu*
 Book of Master Sun Chho. *See* *Sun Chho Tzu*
 Book of Odes. *See* *Shih Ching*
 Book of the Preservation-of-Solidarity Master. *See* *Pao Phu Tzu*
 Book of Roads and Provinces. *See* *Kitāb al-Masālik w'al-Mamālik*
 Book of Shipping. *See* *Yuktikalpataru*
 Book of the Transformations (in Nature). *See* *Hua Shu*
 Boomerang, 538 (d)
 Booms, harbour, 202–3, 687, 694–5
 of ship rigs, 588 ff.
 Bordeaux wine trade, 452 (b)
 Borelli, Alfonso (physiologist, + 1679), 673
 Boreux, C., 433, 435

INDEX

Borneo, 186, 416, 443, 486, 490, 536–7, 586–7
 Borobodur, ships on temple reliefs of, 457–8, 460, 474 (c), 602, 608, 613 (d), 619 (b)
 Bosphorus, 159
 Boswell, James (+ 1778), 46
 Botany, 545
 Bouillard, G. & Vaudesca, C. (1), 58
 Boundaries, 256, 260, 264
 Bourne, William (navigator, + 1580), 423 (a), 559 (j)
 Bousing-to tackle, 404–5, 632
 Bovipeds, 14 (a)
 Bow
 crooked, 430–1
 of Egyptian ships, 433
 of junks, 399
 square, 397, 455
 upturned, 394
 Bow-sweep, 399, 406, 411, 426, 463, 630 (b), 697
 Bowden, F. P., 14 (a)
 Bowen, R. le Baron, 383, 599, 608, 616–17
 Bowlines, 597 (b), 614
 Bowsprit-sail. *See* Sails
 van Braam-Houckgeest, A. E. (+ 1796), 35 (d), 149
 Braggozzi, 613
 Brahmaputra, R., 163, 206
 Brails, 598, 608
 Brawa, 490, 498, 514
 Brazil, 394 (c), 506, 529
 Brazil Arc, 513, 558
 Breathing exercises, 674
 Breathing-tubes (divers' equipment), 668–9, 673–4
 double, 673
 Brenta Canal, 365
 Brenta (River), 351
 Breslau, MS. illustration of stern-post rudder at, 636
 Bretschneider, E. (6), 532
 Breughel, Pieter, the Elder, 20 (c)
 Briare Canal, 358
 Bricklaying, 41
 Bricks, 40 ff., 45, 54, 66, 140
 Han, 40, 150
 moulded, 88, 126–7
 Brickwork, 65, 179
 Brides of the river-gods, 543 (c)
 Bridge Pool Essays. *See* *Liang Chhi Man Chih*
 Bridge ships. *See* Chhiao chhuan
 Bridgekeepers, 160
 Bridges
 Abbot's Bridge, Bury St Edmunds, 175
 Amu Darya, pontoon bridge, 161
 An-Chi Chhiao, 178–9, 181
 An-Lan So Chhiao, 192
 Avignon, 32 (c), 179 (a), 181
 Carrick-a-rede, 208 (e)
 Charles Bridge, Prague, 175 (f)
 Chhingchow, Flying Bridge, 164
 Chhui-Hung Chhiao, 175
 Chi-Hung Thieh Chhiao, 193, 200–1

INDEX

837

- Bridges (*cont.*)
- Chi-Mei Chhiao, 181, 183
 Chia-Hsi Chhiao, 171
 Chiang-Tung, 155
 Chin-Lung Thieh Chhiao, 200
 Chin-sha Chiang, 199
 Ching-Tê Chhiao, 181
 Ching-tung, 196 ff., 208
 Chio-chih-chen, 171
 Chou-Tshun Chhiao, 181
 Fêng, 150
 'Fishermen's Bridge', Pin-chhuan, 193
 at Florence, 175, 180-1
 Golden Gate, 191 (d), 210
 Hêng Chhiao, 150
 Ho Yang Chhiao, 160 (g), 161
 Hsi-Chin Chhiao, 165
 Hsiao-ho-chhang, 206
 Hsiao-I Chhiao, 160 (g)
 Hudson suspension, 191 (d)
 Hui-thung Chhiao, 200
 Hui-Yuan Chhiao, 284 (d)
 I-Hsing So Chhiao, 187
 Imjin river cable bridge, 190 (d)
 Jade Girdle, 171
 Khunshan, 170
 Ku Thieh Chhiao, 202
 Ku-Ting Chhiao, 181
 Kuan-ling, 203 ff.
 Kung-Kuo Chhiao, 200
 Lan-Chin Thieh Chhiao, 196, 197 (c), 201
 Lhasa, 151 (e), 163
 Ling-Khung Chhiao, 181-2
 Lou-Tien Chhiao, 181, 182 (b)
 Loyang, 148 (e), 153 ff., 161, 172
 Lü-Jen Chhiao, 172
 Lu-Kou Chhiao, 181, 183
 Lu-ting, 196, 202
 Lung-chhuan river, 201-2, 205 (a)
 Menai Straits, 208
 Mu-Chhia Chhiao, 181
 Pa Tzu Chhiao, 153
 Pao-Tai Chhiao, 174
 Pavia, covered bridge, 175, 181
 Phan-Kuang Chhiao, 154, 156
 Phu-Chi Chhiao, 181
 Phu-Chin Chhiao, 160-1
 Pin-chhuan, 193
 Pons Fabricius, 168, 172, 179 (a), 181
 Pons Milvius, 168
 Pont de Castellane, Sisteron, 181
 Pont de Céret, 179
 Pont de la Guillotière, Lyon, 181
 Pont St Esprit, 175, 181, 184
 Pont St Martin, 168
 Ponte d'Augusto, Narni, 168 (d)
 Ponte Coperto, 181
 Ponte Vecchio, 175, 181, 184, 358 (e)
 Rialto, 175, 181
 San-Hsia Thieh Chhiao, 202
 San-Hsing Chhiao, 171
 Seventeen Arches Bridge, 171
 Severn, 151 (l)
 Shen-Pei Chhiao, 163
 Shun-Chih Chhiao, 159
 Ta-chien-lu, double-rope bridge, 185
 Ta-Yang Chhiao, 160 (g)
 Tees bridge, 208
 Thai-Phing Chhiao, 153 (b)
 Thien-Chin Chhiao, 172, 174
 Trezzo, 175, 181
 Tung-Mei Chhiao, 171
 Tzu-thung, 171, 173 (b)
 Uttar Pradesh, 158
 Visconti Bridge, Trezzo, 181
 Wan-Li Chhiao, 171-2
 Wan-Nien Chhiao, 173
 Wuchiang, 174-5
 Yang-Chhü Chhiao, 172
 Yung-Thung Chhiao, 181-2
- Bridges and bridge-building, 1, 30, 32, 139, 145 ff.
 arch, 167 ff., 210, 211; segmental, 38 (d), 146, 158, 169, 175, 180 ff., 210, 358 (e)
 beam, 145 ff., 149-59, 170, 181, 210
 cantilever, 146-7, 162 ff., 210; horizontal arm, 164
 clapper, 152
 flume, 369 (c)
 megalithic, 145, 148, 153 ff., 181, 210
 movable. *See* Drawbridges
 pontoon, 146, 148, 150 (b), 159 ff., 173, 201-2, 679-80, 695
 reinforced concrete, 179
 Roman, 168
 spiritual value of, 32 (c), 154, 173, 197
 suspension, 146-7, 166, 184 ff., 210, 274, 288, 339; in Andean massif, 546 (e); catenary, 185, 190-1, 193, 206, 208; in Europe, 207 ff.; flat-deck, 205-6; iron-chain, 23, 146-7, 193 ff.; 206, 687 (g); linked iron bars, 196, 207; military uses of, 190-1; modern, 200; rod-linked, 149 (e); rope (or cable), 184 ff., 201-3, 206; submersible, 159, 190, 202
 technical terms, 164-5, 168 ff., 174
 upkeep of, 160-1, 173-4
 wooden, 166, 175
- Brief Memoir on Dyke Repairs. *See* Hsiu Fang *So Chih*
- Brief Record of Buildings and Palace Halls. *See* Shih Kung Hsiao Chi
- Brindley, H. H., 383; (2), 610; (5), 615, 636; (6), 615; (10), 657
- Brindley, James (engineer, + 1767), 215 (d)
- Brine industry, 414 (b), 659, 664
- Bringing of the Hidden Waters to the Surface. *See* *Imbāt al-Miyāh al-Khafīya*
- Britain, 27, 34, 54
 boats of, 389 (f)
- British colonies, 524
- British Museum, Chinese MSS. in, 423
- British Navy, 624, 667
- Brohier, R. L., 369
- Bronze boats, 665
- Bronze bowls, 126 (a), 186
- Bronze drums, engravings of ships on, 446-7, 646

- Bronze-founders, 130 (b)
 Bronze mirrors, depicting ships, 457 (d)
 Bronze technology, 435 (b)
 Bronze vessels, depictions of war-boats on, 445–7
 Brown, Lancelot (landscape gardener, +1715 to +1783), 75 (h)
 Brunei, 490
 Brückner's principle, 253
 Brush-writing, and curves of roofs, 91 (e)
 du Buat (hydrodynamical physicist, +1734 to 1809), 332 (e)
 Bubonic plague, 530
 Buckets, 262–3
 Buddha's Aureole Temple. *See* Fo-Kuang Ssu
 Buddhist and Buddhists, 32, 136–7, 167, 173, 197, 370, 450, 526, 584 (f)
 and architecture, 69
 and the Chinese, 522–3
 cosmography, 550
 and diving techniques, 674
 and the Portuguese, 522
 Buddhist frescoes. *See* Frescoes
 Buddhist images, and cultivated pearls, 675–6
 Buddhist monks
 and bridge-building, 154, 173
 and the discovery of America, 540–1
 Buddhist pagodas, as lighthouses, 662
 Buddhist paradises, 88–9, 455
 Buddhist pilgrims, 451
 Buddhist relics, 137
 Buddhist Ship of Faith, 455
 Buddhist 'spires', 129
 Buddhist temples. *See* Temples
 Buginese, visits to Australian coast, 537
 Buglio, Louis (Li Lei-Ssu, Jesuit missionary, +1606 to +1682), 111
 Buhu-ela, 372
 Builders' magic, 53 (a)
 Building calculations, 106, 110
 Building materials, 61, 66, 90–1, 103–4
 Building technology, 58 ff.
 literature on, 80 ff.
 preparatory work, 104 ff.
 technical terms, 38–9, 67–8, 80, 82 ff., 86, 92 ff., 125
 Buildings
 domestic, 61, 69
 measurements, 89
 miniature, 105–6
 multi-storey, 104
 one-storey, 139–40
 round and square, 122 (a)
 rural, 69
 urban, 69
 Bukka II (Vijayanagar King, +1406), 367
 Bulkheads, 408, 411–12, 434, 436–7, 439, 460, 463, 468, 470, 695
 in crooked-bow and crooked-stern boats, 430
 in junks, 391, 397, 399–400, 633, 653
 timber for, 414
 transverse, 391, 394, 396 (f), 421
 water-tight, 420–2
 Bulling, A. (2), 59, 88; (9), 88
 Bulwark gate, 407
 Bulwarks, 416, 575, 683, 685
 covered with wetted hides, 449
 Bundelkhund, 367
 Bureau of Boats and Oars, i.e. Canal Transport.
 See Chou Chi Shu
 Bureau of Rivers and Canals. *See* Ho Chhü Shu
 Bureaucratic Personnel Astrology of the 28 Lunar Mansions, a Sea People's Manual. *See* *Hai Chung Erh-shih-pa Hsiu Chhen Fên*
 Bureaucratism. *See* Feudal bureaucratism
 Burma, 146, 185 (g), 186, 189, 190, 193
 river boats, 607
 royal barges, 435 (e)
 Burma Road, 16, 25, 28, 33 (b), 200
 al-Burtukāl, 503
 Bury St Edmunds, 175
 Bush, R. E. & Culwick, A. T., 118
 Bushel. *See* *hu*
 Buttresses, 103, 175
 Byōdōin, 95 (c)
 Byzantine MS. depicting lateen sail, 609
 Byzantine ships, 684 (a), 693
 Byzantium, 73 (b), 137, 170 (a), 438, 696
 fall of, 505
 Ca' da Mosto, Alvise (navigator, +1455), 558
 Cabin John Aqueduct Bridge, 168 (b)
 Cabinet-making, 135
 Cabins, 467–8, 470
 Cable railways, 185
 Cables
 anchor-, 415, 658
 bamboo, 161, 185, 191, 328, 415, 437, 466, 664
 of liana, 184–5
 technical terms, 191
 tensile strength of, 191 (d), 328, 664
 towing-, 191, 415, 466, 663–4
 underground, 104 (c)
 The Cabots (explorers and mariners), 474
 Cabral, Pedro Alvares (navigator, +1500), 506, 513–14
 Caigiu, 312 (f)
 Caisson-disease, 672 (d)
 'Caitya-arch', 167 (d)
 Caius, John (royal physician, and founder of Gonville & Caius College, *d.* +1573), 62 (d)
 Caledonian Canal, 377
 Calendars, 544
 Calicut, 489, 491, 506, 508, 518
 California, 540, 587
 Callisthenes (historian, *d.* –328), 674 (c)
 Camaldolese, Fra Mauro (geographer, +1459),
 world-map of, 471 ff., 499, 501–2, 572
 Cambodia
 architecture, 128
 artists, 648
 boats of, 422, 450
 de Camoens, L. (poet and venturer), 507
 Camp-stool, 136
 Canada, 617

INDEX

839

- Canal ship. *See Tshao fang*
- Canals, 1, 3 ff., 37, 211 ff., 220, 223, 229 ff., 254 ff., 266, 273 ff., 375, 665
 classification of, 4, 254
 contour, 216, 222 (d), 224, 271, 281, 300, 359, 375
 dimensions of, 254–5
 European, 376–8
 governmental, 251, 263–4
 irrigation, 212, 214–15, 226, 230, 254, 261, 269, 272, 285 ff., 345, 365
 lateral derivate irrigation, 374
 military significance of, 214, 226–7, 281, 374 (g)
 perennial and inundatory, 365–6, 375–6
 summit, 216, 306, 314 ff., 358–9, 361, 375
 technical terms, 255
 transport, 8, 29, 152–3, 212, 214, 216, 226–7, 230, 266, 269, 273, 299, 374
 urban, 309–10
- Canals (by name)
- Arno, 358, 376
 - Aude-Garonne, 353 (d)
 - Bereguardo, 358
 - Brenta, 365
 - Briare, 358
 - Caledonian, 377
 - Chan Chhü, 309
 - Chêngkuo, 285–7
 - Chhang-an, 215 (d), 278
 - Chichow, 345
 - Chung-mou, 262
 - 'Cornucopia Channel' (Pao-Phing Khou), 289
 - Cu'u-Yên, 329 (d)
 - Duke of Bridgewater's, 215 (d)
 - Grand, 282 ff., 306–20, 358 ff.
 - Han Kou, 271, 282, 299 (b), 306, 309, 317, 375
 - Huan Kung Kou, 314, 318–19
 - Hui Thung Ho, 313–14, 318–19
 - Hung Kou, 269–70, 274, 304, 306 ff., 374
 - Inner Grand, 317 (c)
 - Kuang Chi Chhü, 309
 - Kuang Thung Chhü, 309
 - Kuanhsien system, 288–96
 - Lang-Tang Chhü, 270
 - Lanthien, 347
 - Ling Chhi Shui Khou, 300
 - Ling Chhü, 299–306
 - Lo-Hui Chhü, 287
 - of Lombardy, 377–8
 - Martesana, 377
 - Nahr al-Räsäsi, 366 (c)
 - Nahrawän, 366
 - Nan Chhü, 300, 302
 - Nieh river, 224 (b)
 - Nieuwe Rhijn, 364
 - Nile to Red Sea, 356–7, 359, 373 (i), 465 (i), 609 (f)
 - Pai, 228, 281, 286
 - Panama, 365
 - Parma, 358
 - Pei Chhü, 300, 303, 305
 - Pien Chhü (the old, before +600), 270, 281, 307–8, 312, 345–6, 359, 363, 375
 - Pien Chhü (the New Pien, completed +605), 164, 308 ff., 332–3, 344, 353, 362, 377
 - Rhône, 376 (d)
 - Salt Canals, 308, 317 (c)
 - Shantan system, 297–8
 - Shan-yang Yün-Tao, 282, 309, 314, 317–18, 351
 - Stecknitz, 304 (a), 358–9
 - Thao river, 224 (b)
 - Thung Chi Chhü, 307, 451
 - Thung Hui Ho, 312–13, 318, 355
 - Tshao Chhü, 273
 - Yang Chhü, 276
 - Yung Chi Chhü, 310
- Canary Islands, 465 (i), 471–2, 505, 552
- Cannabis sativa*, 531 (c)
- Cannon, 516 (b), 627
 of Liang-shan ship, 479
- 'Canoe yawls', 592
- Canoes, 384, 440, 625
 bark, 386
 double, 392
 dugout, 384, 386, 388, 392, 396 (f), 433 (e), 437 (d), 445
- Canopus, 561, 583
- Cantilever brackets, 65
- Cantilever bridges. *See* Bridges
- Cantilever principal rafters. *See* Lever arms
- Canting, of square-sails, 458. *See also* Sails
- Canton, 15, 24, 28, 299–300, 453, 496, 629, 672
 buildings, 103, 132
 excavations, 127, 448, 649
 lighthouse, 662
 naval battle near, 477
 ships, 449, 469, 601, 618
- Canton river system, 220
- Canton ship models (Han), 448, 469, 654, 658
- Cantonal offices (*thing*), 35
- Cão, Diogo (navigator, fl. +1482 to +1486), 506
- 'Capability Brown'. *See* Brown, Lancelot
- Cape of Good Hope, 379, 534
 rounding of, 486, 501–2, 506, 529, 610
- Capital (*ching*), character for, 43
- Capitalism, 514 (a), 517–18
- Capstans, 191 (a), 203, 347, 352, 363, 596, 659, 667
- Caracalla (Roman emperor, +215), 47 (b)
- Caravan trails, 17–18, 29
- Caravela redonda*, 509, 609 (i)
- Caravels, 452 (b), 474 (d), 509, 513, 606, 609 (i), 689 (a)
- Cardan suspension, 559, 622 (g)
- Cargo, 397, 401 (a), 412, 462, 464, 466, 600
- Cargo-ships. *See* Merchant-ships
- Carlini, Capt., 655
- Carmona, Adm. A. L. B. (1), 338
- Carpentry, 66, 135, 450
- Carrick-a-rede bridge, 208 (e)
- Carrying-poles, 546 (l)
- Cart-tracks, 32
- Carta Pisana, 555
- Carthaginian wars (c. –260), 693
- Cartography and cartographers, 331, 493, 538, 557
 quantitative, 568

Carvel-build, of ships, 384–5, 388–9
 Cary, G. (1), 57
 Caryatides, 127
 Caspian Sea, 18, 471–2
 Casson, L. (2), 615
 Cast iron, 103–4, 197, 198 (d), 260, 289 (b), 682 (e)
 in bridge-building, 151
 commemorative columns, 201 (a)
 mooring-posts, 162
 pagodas, 141, 682 (e)
 de Castanheda, F. L. (+1554), 468 (a), 603, 619
 Castelli, Benedetto (+1628), 231 (d)
 Castelvechio bridge, 175, 178, 181
 Castiglione, Joseph (Lang Shih-Ning, +1688 to +1766), 111 (c)
 Castled ships. *See Lou Chhuan*
 de Castro, João (navigator, +1525), 559
 Catalan world-map, 380 (a), 471–2, 479, 499
 Catamaran. *See Rafts, log*
 Catapults, 693, 695
 Catenary bridge. *See Bridges, suspension*
 Catty. *See chin*
 Caulking materials, 413–14, 450, 459, 465 ff., 483, 664
 Cautionary Stories. *See Chien Chieh Lu*
 Cauvery river, 367
 Cave-dwellings, 120, 125, 133
 Celadon, 497
 Celebes, 186, 507
 Celestial atlas, 569
 Celestial sphere, 578 ff., 585
 Cenote sacrifices, 543 (c)
 Centaurus, 566
 ‘Centipede-boat’ (Wu-kung chhuan), 626 (e)
 Central America. *See America, Central*
 Central generators, 104 (c)
 Central heating. *See Heating*
 Centralised government. *See Government*
 Centre-boards, 393, 426, 429, 618–20, 642–3, 648, 654, 697–8
 Centrifugal spin, 231
 Ceramics. *See Porcelain*
 Cereals, 603
 Ceuta, 504–5
 Ceylon, and Ceylonese, 137 (d), 138, 535, 565, 567, 582
 boats, 392, 438 (h), 453, 612, 698
 hydraulic engineering, 215–16, 267 (d), 329 (b), 359, 365, 368 ff., 373–4, 375–6
 rainfall, 368–9
 religion, 522
 sails, 606, 615
 stele, 489 (b)
 voyages to, 489, 491
 Cha (canal lock gate), 349–50, 354, 360 (e)
 Cha thou, 354
 Chagatai (son of Chingiz Khan), 151, 161
 Chai Jung (*fl.* +189), 70 (a)
 Chairs, 136–7
 Chak-sam-ch’ò-ri bridge, 206
 ‘Chalk mud’, 40 (a)

Chambers, Sir William (architect, +1757), 58, 149, 158 (a), 208 (d)
 Champa, 477, 487, 489
 Champa people. *See Tribal peoples*
 Chams, 450
 Chan Chhü, 309
 Chan Hsi-Yuan (horologist, *c.* +1360), 569
 Chan hsien (‘Combat-Junks’), 424, 686–7
 Chan Kuo Tshê (Records of the Warring States), 266
 Chan tao (gallery roads), 20, 22, 198, 206
 Chan Thien-Yu (railway engineer, 1860–1919), 34 (a)
 Chan Tzu-Chhien (painter, late +6th century), 128 (a)
 Chandel dynasty, 367
 Chang (river), 271, 281, 374
 Chang Ang (Administrator of Han-chung), 21
 Chang Chhien (traveller and explorer, –2nd century), 136, 188, 550
 Chang Chi (*fl.* +995), 270 (b)
 Chang Chia-Chên (*fl.* +675), 178
 Chang-chia-khou, 48
 Chang Chia-Yin (poet, *c.* +1545), 196
 Chang Chih-Hsin (Thang sea-captain), 453
 Chang Chiu-Ling (Thang poet), 247
 Chang Chung-Su (scholar, *fl.* +813), 161 (e)
 Chang Chung-Yen (bridge-builder, +1158), 150, 161, 409
 Chang Han-Ying, 326; (1), 217; (1), 237; (2), 217
 Chang Hêng (astronomer and mathematician, *fl.* +107), 86, 117 (d), 560–1, 586
 Chang Hsia (official of the Ministry of Works, +1034), 321, 323
 Chang Hsieh (nautical writer, +1618), 382, 533, 581–2, 584
 Chang Hsien-Tsu (bridge-builder, *fl.* +1324), 175
 Chang Hsüan (naval commander, +1282), 478
 Chang Hsüeh (Sung prefect of Chhuchow), 409
 Chang Hua (naturalist, *c.* +285), 550, 639
 Chang Hung-Fan (Mongolian commander, +1279), 667
 Chang I (general, *fl.* –316), 288, 441 (c)
 Chang I (scholar, *fl.* +770), 80–1
 Chang I (political writer, *fl.* +1131), 476
 Chang Jan (architect-gardener, +17th century), 75
 Chang Jo (general, *fl.* –316), 288
 Chang Jung (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* –1), 228–9
 Chang Jung (engineer, +13th century), 151, 161
 Chang Khai (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +321), 282
 Chang Khung-Sun (engineer, *fl.* +1289), 313
 Chang Kuei-Shêng, 501
 Chang Kung-I (Chhing hydraulic engineer), 285 (a)
 Chang Li-Tao (Yuan engineer), 297
 Chang Liang (statesman, –206), 20 (f)
 Chang Lien (architect-gardener, +17th century), 75
 Chang Lun (Fine Craftsmanship Bureau Commissioner, *c.* +1023), 352–3
 Chang Phêng-Ho (hydraulic engineer, +1725), 326

INDEX

841

- Chang Pogo (Korean merchant prince, +828), 454
- Chang Shêng (scholar, +1522), 492
- Chang Shih-Hua (Ming naval physician), 491 (h)
- Chang Shun (Minister of Works, *fl.* +48), 276
- Chang Ta (+15th-century naval commander), 491
- Chang Thang (Censor-in-Chief, -120), 21, 275
- Chang Tsê-Tuan (painter, *c.* +1120), 115, 163, 165, 359 (b), 463, 648
- Chang Tzu (poet, *fl.* +1200), 347
- Chang Wan-Hu (+13th-century navigator), 644
- Chang Wên-Chih (Comptroller of Brickfields, +16th century), 42
- Chang Yen (commentator, +3rd century), 680
- Chang Yü (Later Han civil engineer), 22
- Changyuan River, 245
- Channel contraction method, 231, 235 ff.
- Channel expansion theory, 234 ff.
- Chansi. *See* Shansi
- Chao (King of Yen, *r.* -311 to -279), 551
- Chao (State), 43, 54, 265
- Chao Chhiung (bridge engineer), 201
- Chao Chia-Phing (\pm 1st century), 126
- Chao Hsiang of Chhin, Prince (*fl.* -350), 150, 160
- Chao-hsien, 178, 181, 184
- Chao-hsien tribe. *See* Tribal peoples
- Chao-hua, 23-4, 26
- Chao I-Chhing (+18th-century scholar), 300, 324
- Chao Ju-Kua (historian of foreign parts, +13th century), 187, 393, 464, 475-6, 494-5, 508, 536-7, 550, 661, 687 (g)
- Chao Kao (eunuch, *fl.* -209), 53
- Chao Khuang-Yin (founder of the Sung dynasty), 36
- Chao Po-Chü (painter, *fl.* +1120), 107 (a), 461 (c), 648 (b)
- Chao Pu-Yu (Sung engineer), 295 (g)
- Chao San-Shou (late +18th-century courtesan), 202 (f)
- Chao Sung (magistrate, +1089), 354
- Chao Tho (commander, -219), 441
- Chao Ti (Han emperor, d. -74), 37
- Chao Tzu-Yuan (official in Yunnan, *fl.* +1274), 297
- Chao-yang Hu (lake), 327
- Chao Yen-Wei (writer, *c.* +1206), 631-2
- Characters, Chinese
- connected with types of bridges, 147
 - for *ching thien* ('well-field'), 257-8
 - connected with houses, 119-20
 - connected with urban settlement, 72-3
 - as wall-decoration motif, 498 (e)
- Charcoal, 245
- Chariot-wheel gauge, 5
- Chariots, 30 (d), 37, 435 (b)
- Charles V (+1530), 684
- Charles Bridge, Prague, 175 (f)
- Charnock, J., 382, 417-18, 611 (f)
- Chartres cathedral, 61 (b)
- Chata*. *See* *Xavega*
- Chatley, H., 237
- Chatterton, E. K. (1), 405, 607; (4), 619
- Chavannes, E., 166; (6), 187
- Chê-yang-chhien chhuan ('shallow-draught ocean ship'), 415
- Cheese, 521
- Chekiang, 31, 53, 151, 210, 284, 354
- ships and boats, 429, 623, 631
 - shipyards, 480
- Chemulpo, sea battle, 683
- Chen (river), 275
- Chen-chiang, 222
- temple at, 142
- Chen-chou. *See* I-chêng
- Chen I-Chhêng (15th-century Imperial Physician), 491 (h)
- Chen-Kuo Ssu (Protection-of-the-Nation Temple). *See* Temples
- Chên-yang, 27
- Chen-Yuan Chhiao, 161 (h)
- Chêng (State), 260 (d), 269, 271, 275
- Chêng Chao-Ching (1), 216, 318-19
- Chêng Chen-To (3), 463; (3) 163; (5), 244
- Chêng Chhêng-Kung. *See* Koxinga
- Chêng-chou, 43
- Chêng Hao-Shêng (1), 479; (2), 324
- Chêng Ho (+15th-century admiral), 144 (b), 382, 452 (b), 474, 479 ff., 486 ff., 502 ff., 507, 515-16, 522, 525, 564, 571, 582
- Chêng Hsüan (commentator, +2nd century), 80, 160, 254
- Chêng Khang-Chhêng. *See* Chêng Hsüan
- Chêng Kuo (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +246), 285-6
- Chêng Lei Pên Tshao* (Reorganised Pharmacopoeia), 531-2
- Chêng Nan Chiang, 289
- Chêng Tang-Shih (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* -132), 232, 273, 309, 375
- Chêng Tê-Khun (9), 122
- Chêng-ting, 276
- Confucian temple at, 130
- Chêngchow, 262
- railway bridge, 237-8
- Chêngkuo Canal, 227, 264, 285-7, 349 (b), 376
- Chensi. *See* Shensi
- Cheung Inpo, 683
- Chha* (canal lock gate), 349-50, 354-5
- Chha Ho, 313
- Chha shou*. *See* Inverted V-braces
- Chhan bridge, 150
- Chhan river, 335, 347
- Chhan (school of Buddhism), 105
- Chhan-Ling Ssu temple, 676
- Chhang-an, 4, 6, 8, 15, 20, 28 ff., 69, 74, 87, 131, 276
- canals, 273-4, 279, 309-10, 347
 - excavations at, 6 (d)
 - ode on, 86
 - size of, 73 (b)
 - walls, 45
- Chhang An (Chhin engineer), 15
- Chhang-an Canal, 215 (d), 278
- Chhang-an Chih* (History of the City of Eternal Peace), 88

- Chhang-an Chih Thu* (Maps to illustrate the History of the City of Eternal Peace), 88
- Chhang-an Thu Chi* (Historical Map of Chhang-an), 88
- Chhang Chien (poet, *fl.* +727), 392 (h)
- Chhang Kho-Ching (diplomat, *c.* +1430), 491
- Chhang kou*. *See* Grappling-irons
- Chhang-lo, stele to goddess Thien-Fei at, 523
- Chhang-sha, 8, 16, 300
tomb at, 447
- Chhang Tê (ambassador, +1259), 335, 440
- Chhang-ting, Confucian temple at, 127
- Chhang Wu Chih* (Notes on Life's Staples), 88 (e)
- Chhao* (bow-sweep), 406
- Chhê shui*, 350 (c)
- Chhen (dynasty), 689–90, 694
- Chhen (State), 269–70
- Chhen Chhang (naval physician, *fl.* +1425), 491 (h)
- Chhen Chung (bridge engineer, *fl.* +1041), 153 (f)
- Chhen-chia Lou (courtyard house), 131 (g)
- Chhen Chien (artist, *fl.* 1830), 262
- Chhen Chu-Fo (engineer, 12th century), 130
- Chhen Fu (agriculturalist, *fl.* +1149), 247
- Chhen Ho-Chhing (+12th-century engineer, 130 (b))
- Chhen Hsi-Liang (+11th-century provincial governor), 164
- Chhen Hsü-Tsung (civil engineer, Chhing period), 322
- Chhen Hsüan (military commander and hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +1403), 410 (b), 526
- Chhen Huang (civil engineer, *d.* +1688), 241 (a), 326
- Chhen Kuei (architect, *fl.* +1406), 75 (i)
- Chhen-liu, 8, 16, 307, 309
- Chhen Lun-Chiung (+1744), 549
- Chhen Min (civil engineer, *fl.* +321), 282, 309
- Chhen Mu (engineer, perhaps the first to use gunpowder in blasting, *fl.* +1541), 343 (d)
- Chhen Pang-Kho (Imperial Censor, +1595), 336
- Chhen Shih-Tao (writer, *c.* +1090), 128 (d)
- Chhen Sung (Indian envoy, +250), 449
- Chhen Têng (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +189), 281
- Chhen Thang (general, –36), 18
- Chhen Tsan (commentator, *c.* +300), 681
- Chhen-tsang Road, 19–20, 22
- Chhen Tsu-I (tribal chief of Palembang, +1406), 515
- Chhen Yao-Sou (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +995), 287
- Chhen Yao-Tso (civil engineer, +1014), 321, 328
- Chhen Yu-Fu (Sung hydraulic engineer), 314 (c)
- Chhêng* (city-wall or city), 45, 72
- Chhêng Chao-Piao (geographer of waterways, +1690), 326
- Chhêng Chhang-Yü (Governor of Tingchow, +1131), 692
- Chhêng Fan (general, +33), 679
- Chhêng-kung, Confucian temple at, 297 (e)
- Chhêng Shih-Mêng (civil engineer, *fl.* +1060), 324
- Chhêng Tsu (Yung-Lo emperor of the Ming), 77 (c), 487
- Chhêng-Yang Chhiao, 163, 164 (a)
- Chhêng Yao-Thien (mathematician, end of +18th century), 326
- Chhêngchow Mountains, 253
- Chhêngma Yen-Nien (civil engineer *c.* –28), 280 (a), 330
- Chhêngtu
bridges at, 171–2, 187
excavations, 129 (c)
Ta-Chhêng Tien at, 132
waterways, 192, 290, 292, 296, 341, 377
- Chhi* (*pneuma*, subtle matter, matter-energy), 91, 268
- Chhi (dynasty), 50, 255
- Chhi (State), 8, 15, 54, 265, 440, 562
- Chhi river, 310
- Chhi-Erh-Ma (possibly Kilwa), 498
- Chhi Hsiu Lei Kao* (Seven Compilations of Classified Manuscripts), 241
- Chhi Huan (engineer, *fl.* +734), 309
- Chhi Huan Kung. *See* Huan, Duke of Chhi
- Chhi Kuo Khao* (Investigation of the Seven States), 53
- Chhi-lien Shan (Mts.). *See* Nan Shan
- Chhi-lin* (mythical animal, like unicorn), 530
- Chhi Lun (civil engineer, +1014), 321
- Chhi Min Yao Shu* (Important Arts for the People's Welfare), 246
- Chhi-phan Pass, 24
- Chhi Shao-Nan (civil engineer, +1776), 326
- Chhi-tan Liao. *See* Tribal peoples
- Chhi-tsung bridge, 198
- Chhi-Ying (Manchu diplomat), 485
- Chhiang fêng* ('tacking wind'), 604
- Chhiang tribes. *See* Tribal peoples
- Chhiao* (bridge), 147
- Chhiao Chhi-Fêng (hydraulic engineer), 285 (a)
- Chhiao chhuan* (Bridge ships), 678
- Chhiao Chung-Chhang (painter, +12th century), 649 (a)
- Chhiao Wei-Yo (Assistant Commissioner for Transport, +983), 350–1, 352, 357, 660 (i)
- Chhieh-mo, 17
- Chhien* (balks or headlands), 258 (c)
- Chhien Chang-Kan, 200 (f)
- Chhien-chhêng, 330
- Chhien-fo-tung, 139–40
cave-paintings at, 386
gate-house at, 97 (g)
- Chhien Han. *See* Former Han
- Chhien Han Shu* (History of the Former Han Dynasty), 7, 25, 187–8, 228, 230 (d), 267, 277, 280, 285, 324, 329, 345, 443–4, 560, 621, 638–9, 670
- Chhien hsing pan* (Guiding-star stretch-boards, instrument for taking stellar altitudes), 574–5
- Chhien Kung-Fu, 175 (f)
- Chhien Liang (State), 49
- Chhien Liu (Legate of Hangchow, +851 to +932), 320–1

INDEX

843

- Chhien-Lu Pei (reservoir), 280–1, 345
 Chhien Su-Niang (woman engineer, *fl.* +1064), 284 (c)
Chhien Thang Chi (Records of the Sea-Wall along the Chhien-Thang Estuary), 320
 Chhien-thang River, 317, 423, 451, 457, 584, 662
 junks, 607, 613
 Chhien-Thang Sea-wall, 285, 320 ff., 339
Chhien Wên Chi (Traditions of Past Affairs), 492
 Chhien Yen (*d. c.* +1000), 322 (a)
 Chhien Yüeh-Yu (Governor, *c.* +1268), 148
 Chhiehchow, 688
 Chhikan A-Li (Hun technician, +412), 42
 Chhilien Shan (Mts.). *See* Nan Shan
 Chhin (dynasty), 226–7, 251
 architects, 125
 bridges, 147, 160
 building, 89
 Great Wall, 50, 52–3
 hydraulic engineering, 221, 227, 230, 232, 282, 284, 304, 359, 375
 roads, 8, 15, 19–20, 25, 27–8, 33 (b), 49
 voyages and expeditions, 551
 Chhin (river), 310
 Chhin (State), 5, 15, 19, 24, 54, 160, 227, 261, 265, 272, 285–6, 288
 Chhin tombs. *See* Tombs
 Chhin Chiu-Shao (mathematician, *fl.* +1247), 106 (e), 331
 Chhin-huai Ho (R.), 483
 Chhin Liang (Ming architect), 75 (i)
 Chhin-ling mountain passes, 23–4, 31
 Chhin-ling Shan (Mts.), 15, 19, 22–3, 26, 28, 30, 275
 roads across, 347
 Chhin Shih-Fu (shipwright, *c.* +1203), 476, 681 (b), 688–9
 Chhin Shih Huang Ti (first emperor), 5, 7–8, 17, 19, 52–3, 55, 90, 238, 253, 272, 299, 300, 303–4, 441, 551 ff., 562, 674 (a)
Chhin-Ting Kung Pu Kung Chhêng Tso Fa (Official Manual of Constructional Engineering drawn up by the Ministry of Works upon Imperial Order), 85–6
 Chhinchow, wood from, 644–6
 Chhing (period), 37, 48, 50, 52, 75, 155, 241
 brick-laying, 41, 44
 bridges, 159
 building, 80, 83, 99, 143–4
 hydraulic engineering, 282 ff., 293, 317, 322–3, 344
 road-building, 33
 ships, 430, 528
 Chhing (river), 354
 Chhing Chi Tu (canal), 314, 318
 Chhing-chiang, 16, 27
 Chhing-Chün (Buddhist monk and geographer, *c.* +1370), 499
 'Chhing-hai Loop', 49
 Chhing-i (river), 151
Chhing-Li Ho Fang Thung I (General Discussion of the Flood-Protection Works in the Chhing-Li reign-period), 324
 Chhing Ming Shang Ho Thu (Coming up the River to the capital, Khaifêng, after the Spring Festival), 115, 165, 359 (b), 463, 630 (b), 648
Chhing Po Tsa Chih (Green Waves Memoirs), 321 (b)
 Chhingchow, Flying Bridge at, 164
 Chhinghai, 210
 Chhiu Chhang-Chhun (Taoist, *fl.* +1221), 151, 161
 Chhiu Chün (historian of technology, +1480), 425 (g)
 Chhiu Hsing-Kung (bridge-builder, +637), 160 (g)
 Chhoe Pu (Korean envoy and traveller, +1487), 174, 175 (d), 210 (b), 317 (a), 360 (e), 363, 410 (b), 526 (f), 683 (a)
 Chhou Chhieh-Shih (Chhing local historian), 662
 Chhu (State), 8, 15, 26, 54, 270, 396
 battle against Yüeh forces, 681–2
 Chêng invaded by, 275
 Chhin invasion of, 441 (c)
 land survey of, 259
 navy, 681
 tombs, 136
 war against Han, 226
 Chhü-chiang, 15, 27
 Chhu-chou. *See* Huai-an
 Chhü-hsien, stele at, 126
Chhu Hsüeh Chi encyclopaedia, 160
 Chhu Lang (road-builder, *fl.* +656), 278
 Chhü-thang Gorge, 687
 Chhü Yuan (poet, *d.* –288), 250, 436
Chhuan (a ship), 380 (a), 439, 469
 Chhuan Han-Shêng (1), 217
 Chhuan-Hêng (inspectors of rivers and canals), 267
 Chhuan-Shih (recorders of waterways and traffic), 267
 Chhüan Tsu-Wang (+18th-century scholar), 300, 324
 Chhüanchow, 153 ff., 159, 313
 Chhuchow, 466
 Chhüfou, 327
 garden at, 75 (e)
 Temple of Confucius at, 64, 166
 Chhui-Hung Chhiao, 175
 Chhun Chhiu Ching Thien Chi (Record of the 'Well-Field' Land System of the Spring-and-Autumn Period), 258
Chhun Chhiu Hou Chuan (A History of the Ages since the Time of the *Spring-and-Autumn Annals*), 160
 Chhung-Hsüeh Ssu (Reverence-for-Learning Temple), 142 (e)
 Chi (city), 8
 Chi River, 8, 281
 Chi Chhao-Ting (1), 216, 218, 224 ff., 259–60, 282–3, 286
 Chi Chhêng (+17th-century horticultural designer), 75
 Chi Chou Ho, 314–15, 318–19

- Chi-hsien, Tu-Lo-Ssu temple at, 67, 131
 Chi-Hung Thieh Chhiao, 193, 200-1
 Chi Jen (-2nd-century official), 234
 Chi-Mei Chhiao, 181, 183
 Chi-ning, 314, 316, 318
 temple at, 142 (e)
 Chi-Pin. *See* Gandhāra
 Chi Tang-Phu (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +1277),
 289 (b), 295 (g)
 Chi Wu-Phi (writer on gardens, +1634), 91
 Chi Yen (-2nd-century hydraulic engineer), 232
 Chia-Hsi Chhiao, 171
 Chia Hsiang-Li (+3rd-century merchant), 449
 Chia-hsing, pagodas at, 137
 Chia Jang (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* -6), 234-5, 345
 Chia Ku Shan Shou (woman Taoist engineer,
 +1315), 32
 Chia Lu (Yuan hydraulic engineer), 229, 328, 344
 Chia-Na-Tiao-Chou (unidentified country), 602
 Chia Shan (imperial counsellor, *c.* -178), 7
 Chia Ssu-Hsieh (agricultural writer, *c.* +540), 246
 Chia Tan (cartographer, +801), 568, 661
 'Chia-thu' (local expression for ships), 462
 Chia Wei-Kung (military commander, *c.* +1041),
 343
 Chia-yü-kuan gate, 46, 49
 Chialing (river), 19, 24, 26
 Chiang (river), 374
 Chiang Chi (military and naval writer, *c.* +220),
 679
 Chiang Chih-Chhi (Sung hydraulic engineer),
 314 (c)
 Chiang Fan Shan Shih (Sailing Ships making for
 Market by a Mountain Shore), 647
Chiang Fu (The River Ode), 639
 Chiang Jen (Master-Builders), 5
 Chiang-nan, sea-going vessels of, 429
 Chiang Nan Ho, 317 ff., 353
Chiang Pei Yün Chhêng (Handbook on the Course
 of the Grand Canal North of the Yangtze),
 326
 Chiang Shao-Shu (+17th-century writer), 106
 Chiang Tso (Directors of Workmen), 89
 Chiang Tso Ssu (later Chiang Tso Chien). *See*
 Directorate of Buildings
 Chiang-Tso Ta-Chiang (Director of the Imperial
 Architectural and Engineering Department),
 30
 Chiang Tso Yuan, 89
 Chiang-Tung Bridge, 155
 Chiangsi, 26, 28, 31, 132, 162-3, 173, 210, 222,
 247, 452
 ships in, 415, 451
 Chiangsu, 174, 272, 282, 319, 324, 354
 boats of, 399 ff., 425, 428
 Chiangsu lakes, 8
 Chiao-Chih. *See* Tongking
 Chiao-chou. *See* Hanoi
Chiao-chou Chi (Records of Chiaochow), 665, 677
 Chiao Hsün (late +18th-century architectural
 archaeologist), 80 (d)
 Chiao Ping-Chen (artist, *fl.* +1696), 111
 Chiao Shui (river), 178
 Chiao-Yao Kuo, 538 (d)
 Chiating, 394
 Chicago, Home Insurance Building, 104
 Chichen-Itza, 543 (c)
 Chichow canal, 345
Chieh An Lao Jen Man Pi (An Abundance of
 Jottings by Old Mr (Li) Chieh-An), 574
 Chieh Hsi-Ssu (+13th-century poet), 202
 Chieh-Shih, inscription at, 299-300
 Chieh-Thai Ssu, 95 (c)
 Chien-Chen (Kanshin, monk), 130
Chien Chieh Lu (Cautionary Stories), 81 (d)
 Chien-mên (Swordgate) Pass, 24
Chien Phing I Shuo (Description of a Simple
 Planisphere), 579
Chih and *chio* (graduation in finger-breadths), 567,
 570, 573, 575
 compared with Arabic system, 571
Chih-Chêng Ho Fang Chi (Memoir on the Repair
 of the Yellow River Dykes in the Chih-
 Chêng reign-period), 325, 344
Chih Ho Fang Lüeh (Methods of River Control),
 326, 360 (e)
 Chih Ho San Tzu Ching (The Trimetrical Classic
 of River Control), 294
Chih Ho Shu (A Treatise on River Control), 326
Chih Ho Thu Lüeh (Illustrated Account of Yellow
 River Floods and Measures against them), 325
Chih Ho Tshê (The Planning of River Control),
 325
 Chih-I (+6th-century monk), 142 (a)
 Chih-Mêng (Thang monk), 202
Chih Nan Chêng Fa (General Compass-Bearing
 Sailing Directions), 583
 Chih nü ('Weaving Girl', star), 565
Chih Yen (Words to the Point), 7
 Chihli (province), 284
 Chin (dynasty), 88, 227, 277, 279, 282-3, 314
 ships, 679
 Chin (State), 48, 311
 Chin, Prince of (-540), 252 (b)
 Chin (Jurchen) period. *See* Jurchen Chin
 (dynasty)
Chin (catty), 415, 513, 646
 Chin-chhêng (modern Lanchow), 17, 181
Chin Chhuan So Chi (Fragmentary Notes on the
 Chin-chhuan Valley), 189
 Chin Fu (engineer, *d.* +1692), 229, 241 (a), 325
 Chin-Kang Thi (Diamond Dyke), 289
 Chin-Lung Thieh Chhiao, 200
 Chin-Ming Lake, 660
 Chin-niu Tao (Road of the Golden Oxen), 24, 28
 Chin Pi-Fêng (ship-builder, +1420), 480
 Chin-sha Chiang bridge, 199
Chin Shih So (Collection of Carvings, Reliefs and
 Inscriptions), 127
Chin Shu (History of the Chin Dynasty), 42, 161,
 694
 Chin Tartars. *See* Tribal peoples
 Chin Thi. *See* 'Metal Dyke'
 Chin Tzhu. *See* Temples

INDEX

845

- Chin-yang. *See* Thai-yuan
 Chin Yuan (Fords Officers), 37
 China, 'conquerability' of, 527 (b), 534 (b)
China Monumenta Illustrata (+1667), 189, 208
 Chinan, 330
 Chinese, on Indian Ocean coasts, 507–8
 Chinese Admiralty, 476, 491
 Chinese Navy, foundation of, 476–7, 689
 Ching (river), 230, 285 ff.
 Ching (State), 258 (d)
Ching-Fu Tien Fu (Ode on the Ching-Fu Palace), 99 (f)
Ching Hsing Chi (Record of my Travels), 495 (c)
 Ching Kan Lou, 129
 Ching-mên, Battle of, 690
 Ching Shih (Han artisan), 136
 Ching-tê-chen, 151 (h)
 Ching-Tê Chhiao, 181
Ching thien. *See* Well-field system
 Ching Tu, section of *Wên Hsüan*, q.v.
 Ching-tung bridge, 196 ff., 208
 Ching-yang, 285
 Chingchiang, 303
 Chingiz Khan, 151, 161, 297
 Chinnery, George (painter, 1806), 424
 Chinoiserie period, 58
 Chinshan, 241 (d)
 Chio-chih-chen, bridge at, 171
 Chioggia, luggers of, 613
 Chiu Chang series of odes, 396
Chiu Chang Suan Shu (Nine Chapters on the Mathematical Art), 331
Chiu Chang Suan Shu Yin I (Explanations of Meanings and Sounds of Words occurring in the Nine Chapters of Mathematical Art), 110 (f)
 Chiu-chhüan. *See* Suchow (Kansu)
 Chiu-chiang (city), 16, 222
Chiu Thang Shu (Old History of the Tang Dynasty), 562
 Chiu Tzhu, 127
 Chiu-yuan (modern Wu-yuan), 14 ff., 28
 Cho (string attached to arrow), 187
Cho Chêng Yuan Thu (Pictures of the Garden of an Unsuccessful Official), 75 (d)
 Chola (dynasty), 367
 Chola King of Tamil Coromandel, 491
 Chorasmia, 367
 Chou (dynasty), 258–9
 bridges, 147, 160, 162, 167, 186–7
 building, 40, 43, 126, 129, 139
 hydraulic engineering, 282–3, 359, 373, 375
 roads, 35
 sailing craft, 390, 439, 679
 town-planning, 72
 Chou (State), 263, 266
 Chou capital, 4, 5, 44
 Chou (boat or ship), 439
 Chou Chhu (+3rd-century topographer), 165
 Chou Chhü-Fei (historian of traffic with far countries, fl. +1178), 303 ff., 346, 464–5, 475–6, 495, 549–50, 645–6, 672
 Chou Chi Shu (Bureau of Boats and Oars, i.e. Canal Transport), 268
 Chou-chih, 22
 Chou Chün (hydraulic engineer, fl. +1128), 325
 Chou Huang (+18th-century traveller), 382, 404
 Chou Hui (+1193), 321 (b)
 Chou Kung (Duke of Chou), 83
Chou Li (Record of Institutions (lit. Rites) of the Chou Dynasty), 4, 7, 35, 89, 186, 229, 254 ff., 258, 260, 267
 Chou Man (diplomat, c. +1430), 491
 Chou Mi (+13th century), 285 (a), 644
Chou Pei Suan Ching (Arithmetical Classic of the Gnomon and the Circular Paths of Heaven), 575
 Chou Shih Khao (On the Ship's Master and what he should know), chapter of *Tung Hsi Yang Khao*, q.v.
 Chou Shih-Tê (1), 481
 Chou Ta-Kuan (traveller and writer, +1297), 450, 461 (g)
 Chou-Tshun Chhiao, 181
 Christianity, and voyages of exploration, 505, 508, 515, 524, 529
 Christie, A. (1), 460
 Chronometers, 559
 Chryse, 612
Chu (stern of a boat, or 'axle'), 638–9
 Chu Chen (+15th-century Brigadier of Marines), 491
 Chu Chhao-Shih (general, d. c. +423), 172
 Chu Chhi-Chhien (1), 324; (2), 143; (3), 136
 Chu Chhi-Chhien & Yeh Kung-Chao (1), 58
 Chu Chhing (naval commander, +1282), 478
 Chu Chhüan (Ming prince), 493, 531
 Chu Chia-Hsiang (writer on shipping, +1544), 482
 Chu Chia-Min (official in Kweichow, fl. +1629), 203–4
 Chu Ching Chien (Sub-Directorate of Fords, Ferries and Bridges), 268
 Chu-fa chhuan, 394
Chu Fan Chih (Records of Foreign Peoples), 494, 536
 Chu Fu (+11th-century Trade Commissioner), 453 (c)
 Chu Hsieh-Yuan (historian of suspension bridges, fl. +1665), 203–4, 205 (b)
 Chu-kuan (Director of Pearlring), 671
 Chu Liang (+15th-century naval commander), 491
 Chu Ling-Yün (naval commander, fl. +934), 460
 Chü-mi, 18
Chu phai (bamboo rafts), 394
 Chu-Pu So Chhiao. *See* An-Lan So Chhiao
 Chu Ssu-Pên (cartographer, +1312), 499, 501
 Chü-tien, 198–9
 Chu Wei (general, d. c. +45), 126
 Chü-yen, 17
 Chu Yü (writer on shipping, etc., fl. +1119), 461, 463, 465, 602
 Chu-yü, 352

- Chu Yuan-Chang (first Ming emperor, + 1370), 687
 Chu Yün-Ming (naval secretary, c. + 1525), 492
 Chü-yung-kuan gate, 48
Chuan. See Passports
Chuan (something swinging round an axis), 640
 Chuan Hsü (legendary emperor), 252 (b)
 Chuang, Duke (*fl.* – 606), 271
 Chuang Chou (– 4th-century philosopher, Chuang Tzu), 268, 270, 379, 386–7, 420
 Chuang Hsiung-Phi (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* – 120), 333 ff.
 Chuang Thing-Fu (Chhing cartographer), 587
Chuang Tzu (The Book of Master Chuang), 232, 268, 443, 459, 549
 Chuko Chien (Wei general, + 222), 449 (c)
 Chuko Liang (Captain-General of Shu, + 231), 20, 200–1, 201 (a), 205 (b)
Chün (quarter-picul), 415, 646
Chün chhuan pa ('river-deepening harrow'), 336
Chün Ching Kung Shih Thu (Illustrated Treatise on the Plans, Technical Terms, and Uses of the Houses, Palaces, Temples, and other buildings described in the various Classics), 80 (d)
 Chün Wei Yu Ssu. See Defence Production Board
 Chunam (caulking material), 414 (b)
Chung (hundredweight), 25, 285
 Chung-chhüan, 333
 Chung Ho, 326
 Chung Hsiang (leader of peasant revolt, + 1130), 692
 Chung-liu, 121
 Chung-mou Canal, 262
 Chung-shan. See Ching-yang
Chung Thien-Chu Shê-Wei Kuo Chih-Yuan Ssu Thu Ching (Illustrated Description of the Jetavana Monastery in Srāvastī in Central India), 70 (a)
 Chung-thou Ho (river), 327
 Chung-tien, 198
 Chung-wei, 272
 Chungchhang Thung (poet, c. + 210), 639
 Chungking, 16, 221, 375, 390, 399
 Chungshan (feudal State), 48
 Chungshan (city), 8
 Chusan (Chou-shan I.), 577
 fishing-boats of, 430
Cinchona, 531
 Cinnabar, 603
 Circumpolar stars. See Stars
 Cities. See Towns
 City-maps. See Maps and plans
 City-walls. See Walls
 Clapp, F. G., 237
 Clapper bridge. See Bridges
 Classic of the Mountains and Rivers. See *Shan Hai Ching*
 Classification of Crafts (Chu tso têng ti), section of *Ying Tsao Fa Shih*, q.v.
 Classified Documents of the Present Dynasty. See *Kuo Chhao Wên Lei*
 Clay-binding technique, 253
 'Clay-lump' buildings, 40 (c)
 Clay-pits, 253
 Clepsydra, 267 (c), 362 (b), 570
 anaphoric, 569 (e)
 sinking-bowl, 570 (d)
 Climate, 246
 effect on roads, 33 (b)
 and hydraulic engineering, 212, 217, 375, 378
 Clinker-built ships, 384, 388–9
 Clocks
 combustion, 570
 mechanical, 556 (b), 569
 sand-driven, 569
 Clouds, 582
 Clouds and Rain Mountains, 253
 Clover, 520 (e)
 Clowes, G. S. Laird, 438, 474, 610
 Clowes, G. S. Laird & Trew, C. G., 437
 Coal, 135
 'Cob', 40 (a)
 Coca leaves, 531
 Cocaine, 531
 Cochín, 489, 524
 Cochlea, 666
 Coco-nut shells, used for clepsydra, 570 (d)
Codex Atlanticus, 673
 Codex of Administrative Law of the Sung Dynasty. See *Sung Hui Yao Kao*
 Coelho, Nicolau (one of da Gama's captains), 508
 Cofferdam, 152, 174, 177, 293, 329
 in junk, 398
 Cog-wheels, 190, 191 (a)
 Coins, 657
 Āndhra dynasty, 472 (h)
 Chinese, 443, 498
 Roman, 519
 shortage of, 529
 Collected Conversations at Iron-Fence Mountain. See *Thieh Wei Shan Tshung Than*
 Collected Materials on River Control Works. See *Ho Shih Chi*
 Collected Studies on the Ships used by the Japanese and Chinese. See *Wakan Senyōshū*
 Collected Well-tried Shipboard Prescriptions. See *Hai Shang Chi Yen Fang*
 Collection of Military Techniques. See *Wu Ching Tsung Yao*
 Collectivism, 250–1, 259
 'Colliding swoopers.' See 'Stomach-strikers'
 'Colloquies on the Simples and Drugs of India', 531
 Colombian Indians, 380 (b)
 Colombo, 524
 Colonialism, 524
 Colonisation, 15
 Colour, in Chinese buildings, 65
 Colour bar, 506 (d)
 Colour-printing, 85
 Columbus, Christopher (+ 1492), 405, 452 (b), 474, 509, 541 (b), 610
 Columns, of cast iron, 201 (a)

INDEX

847

- 'Combat deckhouse', 408
 'Combat-junks.' *See* Chan hsien
 Combaz, G., 58
 Commandant's Department. *See* Wei Tshao
 Commandants of Passes and Barriers. *See* Kuan Tu-Wei
 Commentary on the Waterways Classic. *See* *Shui Ching Chu*
 Comments on Pictures of the Saints and Sages, Transmitters of the 'Tao'. *See* *Shêng Hsien Tao Thung Thu Tsan*
 Communism, primitive, 257 (c)
 Como (Lake), 377
 freighters of, 607
 Comorin, Cape, 572
 Comoro Islands, 494–5
 Compass (magnetic). *See* Magnetic compass
 Compass-bearings, 563–4, 582
 Compass-card, 563–4
 'double', 565 (c)
Compasso da Navigare, 556
 Complete Description of Waterways. *See* *Shui Tao Thi Kang*
 Complete Library of the Four Categories of Literature. *See* *Ssu Khu Chhüan Shu*
 Complete Treatise on Agriculture. *See* *Nung Chêng Chhüan Shu*
 Comprehensive History and Geography of the Sea-Walls of the Two Chekiangs. *See* *Liang Chê Hai Thang Thung Chih*
 Comprehensive Institutes. *See* *Thung Tien*
 Comptrollers of River and Dyke Works. *See* Ho-Thi Shih-Chê
 Computing devices, 544
 'Conch-boats' (*lo chow*), 674 (a)
 Concrete, 38, 169 (b), 339
 Conflicts between Chinese and Indian Ocean peoples, 515–16
 Confucian temples. *See* Temples
 Confucians and Confucianism, 69, 235, 249, 258, 296, 491
 austerity, 671
 opposition to intercourse with foreign countries, 524–5, 529
 Confucius, 35, 117 (d), 256, 270, 396
 Congo, 501
 Conscripted workers, 25, 30
 Conservancy yards, 342 (d)
 Conservatism, principle of, 698 (a)
 Constantinople, Cathedral of the Holy Wisdom at, 179
 de Conti, Nicolò (+1444), 421, 452 (b), 468 (a), 471 (b), 474, 536 (b), 572
 Continuation of the *Comprehensive Mirror (of History) for Aid in Government*. *See* *Hsü Tzu Chih Thung Chien Chhang Pien*
 'Contributions to the Study of the History of Slavery' (des Noëttes), 626
 Conversations and Discourses of Confucius. *See* *Lun Yü*
 Convict workers, 21, 30–1
 Cook, Captain (+1770), 536, 587
 Coordinates, 581
 Copper plates, used for hull-sheathing, 664–5, 697–8
 Copts, 179
 Coracle, 384, 386
 Coral, 603
 Corbel brackets, 93 (c), 95 ff., 99, 100, 108, 126–7, 131, 138–9, 143, 166
 Corbelled vault. *See* Vault
 le Corbusier, 67
 Cordier, H. (1), 486, 542
 'Corduroy roads', 16 (b)
 Corinth, excavations of *diolkos* at Isthmus of, 364
 'Cornucopia Channel', 289
 Coromandel rafts, 385
 Corpse-amulets, 545
 Correlative thinking, 61, 91, 544
 Corruption, in naval administration, 526 (a)
Corvée labour, 21, 30–1, 38, 90, 220, 223, 250–1, 258, 260, 271, 300
Corvus, 693
 Cosmas Indicopleustes, 455 (b)
 Cosmism, 137 (e)
Cosmographia (P. Apianus), 579–80
 Cosmography, 121, 529
 Buddhist, 550
 'religious', 568
 Cosmology, 544, 585
 and town-planning, 73 (a)
 Cost evaluation
 building projects, 105, 409
 ship-building, 409, 482
 Cotton, 545 (f), 603
 goods, 496, 526
 Counterweights, 348, 351
 Couriers, 35 ff.
 Courtyard system, 61–2, 66, 69, 74, 133
 Coventry cathedral, 104
 'Covered Swoopers.' *See* Mêng-chhung
 Cracow, Collegium Maius, astrolabe at, 580
 Craft terms, 403
 Cramps, 174, 177
 Cranes, 51, 347–8
 Crank
 and stern-post rudder, 627 (c)
 at end of steering-paddle, 637
 de Craponne, Adam (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +1559), 231 (b)
 Crates of Mallos (Stoic philosopher, *c.* –160), 585
 Creation myths, 253–4
 Creel, H. G. (2), 43
 Crescentic bill (weapon), 508 (a)
 Cresques, Abraham (cartographer, +1375), 471 (a)
 Cressey, P. F. (1), 422
 Crete, 465 (i)
 Crews, 452, 459, 462, 469, 480
 of Chêng Ho's fleets, 481, 507 (b)
 of river-junks, 399
 of sea-going junks, 402
 Crimea, 421
 Criminal investigation, 30

- Cross (Cape), 506
 Cross-staff. *See* Jacob's Staff
 Crossbowmen, 449, 469
 Crossbows, 442 (i), 574 (g), 685–6, 688, 693
 Crowsnest, 406, 461
 Crusades, 361, 504–5, 507 (a), 533, 556, 637, 652, 698
 da Cruz, Gaspar (Dominican friar, *fl.* +1556), 149, 666
 Crystal Palace, 104
Cucurbita pepo, 475
 Cultivated pearls. *See* Pearls
 Cultural contacts, 529, 533, 698
 American–Polynesian, 545 (f)
 Chinese–American, 542 ff.
 Chinese–Arabic, 581
 Chinese–Indian, 385, 696
 Chinese–Persian, 335
 Roman–Indian, 616, 698
 Cultural diffusion, 136–7
 Cultures
 Amerindian, 167 (e), 184, 190 (a), 394 (c), 541 ff., 547 (a), 551
 Aztec (Amerindian), 447 (a), 540, 542
 Champa (Indo-Chinese), 477, 487, 489
 Inca, 2, 5 (b), 184 (e), 190, 394 (c), 544 (e)
 Khazar (Turkic Jewish), 208 (i)
 Khmer (Cambodian), 450
 Lung-shan, 120
 Malayo-Indonesian, 437
 Maya (Amerindian), 90 (b), 167 (e), 447 (a), 542
 Thai, 122, 297
 Tungusic, 122
 Cumecs (cub. m. per sec.), 221, 238, 293
 Curragh. *See* Coracle
 Currency
 depreciation of, 526, 529
 export of, 465 (f)
 Current-meter, 332 (e)
 Currents, 555, 562, 583, 604–5
 Atlantic, 476, 511, 513, 557
 Nile, 607
 Pacific, 547 ff.
 Customs (duties), 37, 453, 465 (f)
 Cu'ü-Yên Canal, 329 (d)
 Cyclical characters, 583
 Cynocephali, 541

Dagoba, 137
 Daily Additions to Knowledge. *See* *Jih Chih Lu*
 Damaraland, 506
 Damascening, of sabres, 496
 Damme
 flood-gates at, 357
 seal, 637
 Dampier, Captain W. (*fl.* +1684 to +1690), 536
 Dams, 214–15, 222, 224, 237, 249, 271, 281, 322, 339, 373
 in Ceylon, 368
 in India, 367
 in Persia, 367
 at San-Mên Hsia, 274–5, 278
 Dan-no-Ura. *See* Battle of Dan-no-Ura

- Danish architecture, 102
 Danube R., 166
 Darby, Abraham (*fl.* +1779), 151 (l)
 Darius I (–521 to –486), 159, 357
 Darmstädter, L. (r), 660
 David Globe. *See* Globes, terrestrial
 Davis back-staff, 559
De Bello Vandalico, 609 (e)
De Partibus Animalium, 673 (b)
De Re Aedificatoria, 358
De Rebus Bellicis, 55 (c)
 Dead Sea, 665 (f)
 'Deal pilot-galley', 593 (b)
 Decan-stars, 555
 Deccan, 367, 454, 506
 Decimal metrology, 564 (e)
 Deck-castles, 440–1, 472, 621
 Declination, 559
 magnetic, 559 (d), 563 (c)
 Declination parallels, 578 ff.
 Dedigama, excavations at, 137 (d)
 Dee, John, 562
 Deep-water narcosis, 668 (g)
 Defence, 4, 19, 54–5, 66, 159, 214, 227
 Defence Production Board, 480
 Deforestation, 16 (b), 224, 239 ff., 253
 by burning, 245
 Degree
 in finger-breadths (*chih*), 567
 terrestrial, 560 (a)
 Deir al-Gebrawi necropolis, 433
 Deir al-Medineh temple. *See* Temples
 Delgado, Cape, 494, 497
 A Delicious Dish of Talk. *See* *Than Yuan Thi Hu*
 Demesne land, 257 (c), 259
 Department of Waterways, 160
 Depth-perception, in space, 117 (d)
 Derrick, 155
 Description of the Buddhist Temples and Monasteries at Loyang. *See* *Lo-yang Chhieh-Lan Chi*
 Description of the Palaces (of the Yuan Emperors). *See* *Ku Kung I Lu*
 Description of a Simple Planisphere. *See* *Chien Phing I Shuo*
 Description of the Three Cities in the Metropolitan Area. *See* *San Fu Huang Thu*
Designs of Chinese Buildings (Chambers), 58
 Dēvānampiya Tissa (*fl.* –251), 370
 'Devil's Dykes', 54
 Devundara Deviyo, 523
 Dhātūsēna (*fl.* +479), 370–1
 Dhauli River, 190
 Dial, 556 (b), 569
 Diamond Dyke. *See* Ching-Kang Thi
 Diary of a Journey to the North. *See* *Pei Hsing Jih Lu*
 Diary of Travels in the Ming Empire. *See* *Nyū-Min Ki*
 Dias, Bartolomeu (navigator, +1488), 506, 528
 Diaz, Emmanuel (Yang Ma-No, +1615), 578, 581, 586, 610

INDEX

849

- Dibrugarh, 186
 Dictionary of Local Expressions. *See Fang Yen*
 Dictionary of Sounds and Meanings of Words in the Vinaya. *See I Chieh Ching Yin I*
 Dictionary of Terms. *See Shih Ming*
 Diffusion of techniques. *See* Transmission of inventions and techniques
 'Diggers', 257 (b)
 Dinghies, 622
 Dinwiddie, Dr (c. +1793), 50 (f), 350 (d), 364, 523 (f), 592 (c)
 Diodorus Siculus (*fl.* –30), 357, 365 (f)
Diolkos, 363–4
 Diplomatic missions, 188, 489 ff.
 'Dipper-Observer', 576
 Director of Communications. *See* Ssu Hsien
 Director of the Imperial Architectural and Engineering Department. *See* Chiang-Tso Ta-Chiang
 Director of Pearlring. *See* Chu-kuan
 Director of Water Conservancy. *See* Tu-Shui
 Directorate of Buildings, 89
 Directorate of Grain Transport. *See* Tshao Yün Ssu
 Directorate of Hydraulic Control. *See* Shui-Hêng Chien
 Drawings of Workmen. *See* Chiang Tso
 Discourse on Butterfly Tables. *See Thieh Chi Phu*
 Discourse on Sea-Walls. *See Hai Thang Shuo*
 Discourses concerning the Warring States. *See Kuo Yü*
 Discourses on Salt and Iron. *See Yen Thieh Lun*
 Discourses Weighed in the Balance. *See Lun Hêng*
 Discussions on Sea-Wall Repair and Maintenance. *See Hsiu Hai Thang I*
 Diseases, 268, 530
 'Dissertation on Oriental Gardening', 208 (d)
 Distance
 perception of, 117
 representation of, 111–12, 118
 Divers, 668 ff., 698
 ability to see under water, 462, 668
 dangers encountered by, 672
 depth for, 668, 672
 for sea-food, 668 (a)
 Diver's palsy, 672 (d)
 Divination, 53 (d), 203, 234 (a), 491 (g), 544, 546
 Diving-bells, 673–4
 'Diving-suits', 673 (f)
 Diyala River, 334, 366 (c)
 Docks, 310, 320
 dry, 660
 Documents. *See* Records
 Dog-faced men, 541
 'Dolphin-bearing cranes', 693 (c)
 Dome, 167
 Domestic architecture. *See* Architecture
 Domestic production, 69
 Domitian (*fl.* +83), 47 (a)
 Dôngsón
 bronze-drum boats from, 446–7, 450
 Chinese coins from, 443
 Donkeys, 26, 30
 Donnelly, I. A., 383; (2), 423
 Doolittle, J. (2), 403
 Doors, 103
 Dormer windows, 102
 'Double bearings', 565 (c)
 Double canoe. *See* Canoes
 'Double-headed ship.' *See* Liang-thou chhuan
 Double-hours, 578, 587
 Double-hulled craft, 392 (c), 420 (d), 441 (c)
 Double slipways. *See* Slipways
 Douro freighters, 607
 Dover, seal of, 636 (h)
 Dowels, 174, 177
 Dragnet, for pearl fisheries, 668, 670
 Dragon-boats (*Lung chhuan*), 436–7, 450, 621, 625, 660, 696, 698
 'Dragon-Head Canal', 334
 Dragon motifs, 543
 'Dragon spine' (*lung ku*), 404–5, 406, 429
 'Dragon's-blood' (resin), 506 (b), 530
 Drainage systems, 376 (d)
 Peking, 76 (d)
 Shang kingdom, 373 (f)
 Drawbridges, 146, 159
 Drawing. *See* Painting and drawing
 Drawing of the Summer Palace. *See Pi Shu Kung Thu*
 Dream Pool Essays. *See Mêng Chhi Pi Than*
 Dreams of the Glories of the Eastern Capital. *See Tung Ching Mêng Hua Lu*
 Dredgers, 174, 177, 338, 343, 660, 698
 Dredging, 229, 231, 248, 335 ff.
 Drinking-water, 376 (d), 462
 Drugs, 530–1, 603
 to confer longevity or immortality, 442 (h), 551 ff.
 Drum-towers, 46, 72–3
 Drums
 Buddhist liturgical, 543
 on Chinese warships, 445–6, 686–7
 nailed, 546 (f)
 teponatzli, 543
 Dry docks. *See* Docks
 Dryden, John, 417
 Dues and levies, 258–9
 Dugouts. *See* Pit-dwellings
 Duke of Bridgewater's Canal, 215 (d)
 Durance (river), 231 (b)
 Dürer, Albrecht (+1471 to +1528), 67, 115 (b), 530 (a)
 Dutch, 361, 371 (c), 528, 569
 architecture, 102
 dykes, 339–40
 exploration, 536
 and magnetic compass needle, 563
 and pound lock, 356
 sails, 617
 ships, 619, 649 (f), 684
 trade, 521 (h), 524
 Duttha Gāmani (–2nd century), 372
 Duyvendak, J. J. L. (19), 494

- Düzlük bashi (the Master of the Horizontal), 329 (b)
- Dwelling houses, 59, 61 ff., 65, 74
Chinese characters for, 119
round, 122 (a)
technical terms, 119–20
- Dwelling-pits, 121
- Dykes, 154, 215, 220–1, 223 ff., 228–9, 231 ff., 248–9, 253, 256, 264, 322–3, 329, 331, 375
deliberate destruction of, 241, 265–6, 270 (c), 311
Dutch, 339–40
on the Grand Canal, 319–20
on the Hung Kou, 270
on the Ling Chhü, 305
materials for, 341
repair of, 342 ff.
on the Yellow River, 373
- 'Dyolls', 556
- Eads, J. B. (1884), 365
- 'Eagle-ship.' *See* Ying chhuan
- Eanes, Gil (navigator, +1434), 505
- Ear-plugs, 546 (l)
- Early Han. *See* Former Han
- Earth, sphericity of, 585
- Earth models in demonstrational armillary spheres, 585–6
- Earthquakes, 91, 133, 268, 278
- East Africa. *See* Africa, East
- East Anglia, 40 (c), 54, 175, 249 (b), 264 (b), 308, 438
- East China Sea, 477
- East India Company, 519
- East Indies, 390, 460, 489–90, 504, 511, 536, 587
- Eastern Han (dynasty, +10th century), 131
- Eastern Wei (dynasty, +6th century), 48
- Eaves, 127 (c), 128, 134 (d), 139–40
- Ecke, G. V. (2), 136; (3), 155; (4), 181; (5), 155
- Economic areas. *See* Key economic areas
- Ecuador, 394 (c), 546 (l)
- Edels (Dutch navigator, fl. +1618 to +1627), 536
- Edkins, J. (12), 403, 439; (15), 58
- Edsin Gol, 17, 28, 49
- Edwards, Major (1865), 323
- Egypt, 34, 136, 472–3, 540
anchors, 656
art, 116 (d)
astronomy, 555 (a)
building, 40 (g), 90, 102, 121, 179
canal, 356–7
hydraulic engineering, 215, 365 ff., 376 (b)
rafts, 385, 390
sails, 593, 606 ff., 611, 696
ships, 389, 433 ff., 438, 447, 455, 635, 653, 656, 698
- Eidetic image, 119
- 'Eight-Character Rule', 250 (b), 294
- 'Eight-Oared Boat', 406
- El-Auja, drawing of a sail, 609 (e)
- El-Bersheh, carving at, 90 (e)
- El-Mina de Ouro, fortress-factory at, 511, 517 (b)
- Elahera-ela, 370–1, 373
- Elbing, seal of, 636
- Elburz Mountains, 335
- Electric light, 104 (c)
- Electrolysis, 664 (j)
- Elegy on Encountering Sorrow. *See* Li Sao
- Element theory, 66, 91
- Elephants, 673 (b)
tusks of, 496
- Eleusinian tomb relief, 609
- Embankments, 234, 259, 265, 267, 320 ff.
- Embassies
from Jan-Chhiu kingdom, 665
Japanese, 454, 643
to Korea, 381, 385, 460, 602, 643, 649
Macartney's, 33 (a), 347, 424
to Madras, 491
to Nanking, 490
Spathary, 149 (b)
to Tibet, 491
- The Embattled Ships Commander. *See* Yang Phu
- An 'Empire without imperialism', 518
- Empiricism, 146, 158, 231, 344, 378, 379, 603, 622 (g), 656
- Engakuji (temple), 95 (c)
- Engineers (titles), 89
hydraulic, 223, 277
- England, 152, 264 (b), 660
architecture and building technique, 40, 54, 99, 103
astronomy, 579
boats and ships, 422, 452 (b), 611
canals, 377
font sculptures of ships, 637
trade, 519
- Enichibo Jōnin (painter, +1173 to +1232), 650 (a)
- Enlarged Terrestrial Atlas. *See* Kuang Yü Thu
- Ennin (Japanese monk, fl. +838), 32, 141, 148, 150, 160, 308, 392 (e), 453–4, 468 (a), 619 (a), 643
- d'Entrecolles, F. X. (Jesuit missionary, +1734), 676 (c)
- Ephesus, 2
- 'Epic of Gilgamesh', 356
- Epidemics, 530
- Equator, 501, 578
crossing of, 506
- 'Equipollent Rudder', 655
- Erh-hai Lake, 15
boats of, 437
- Erh Khuan (hydraulic engineer, fl. –111), 264, 286
- Erh-li Kang, 40
- Erh Wang Miao. *See* Temples
- Erh Ya (Literary Expositor [dictionary]), 39, 80, 125, 402
- Eridu, pottery model ship from, 607 (b)
- von Erlach, J. B. Fischer (Austrian architect and engineer, +1725), 208
- Erosion, 236, 239–40, 245–6, 250, 253
- 'Erythraea', 612

INDEX

851

- Escalator-bridges, 159
 Eskimos, 121 (c), 386
 'Essence d'orient', 677
 Essentials of the Comprehensive Mirror of History. See *Li-Tai Thung Chien Chi Lan*
 Essentials of the Pharmacopoeia Ranked according to Nature and Efficacy. See *Pên Tshao Phin Hui Ching Yao*
 Essentials of Sea Affairs. See *Shui Shih Chi Yao*
 Esterer, M., 341
 Ethics, 249
 Ethiopia, 444
 Ethno-botany, 545
 Ethno-helminthology, 545
 Etruscan 'terramare', 72 (c)
 Etruscans, 167
 tomb-paintings, 474 (c), 635
 Eunuchs, 524-5
 Euphrates, 365-6
 Euphroses, 595 ff.
 Eurasian steppes, culture of, 447 (a)
 Europe, 47, 75, 121, 135, 332, 339, 346, 350, 507, 570, 586
 agriculture, 225
 anchors, 657-8
 architecture and building technique, 85, 92 ff., 97, 102-3, 107, 109
 bridges and bridge-building, 23, 145-6, 151, 158-9, 165, 171, 175, 178 ff., 183-4, 197, 207 ff.
 communications in, 3-4
 diving techniques, 673-4
 dry docks, 660
 exploitation of human labour in, 626-7
 feudalism in, 263
 hull-sheathing, 664, 698
 leeboards, 619
 magnetic compass, 651
 navigation, 562, 567, 571
 nomads in, 55
 pearl industry, 676-7
 pound-locks, 355, 357 ff., 361
 pumps, 666-7
 rainfall, 219-20
 road-building, 33
 sails, 591, 599, 609 ff., 613 ff., 617, 698
 ships, 385, 388-90, 397, 399 ff., 404, 413 (i), 416 (i), 417 ff., 427, 438, 446, 452 (b), 463, 468, 471-2, 509, 586, 632, 642, 684, 695 ff.; oldest Chinese picture of, 513; three-masted, 474, 610
 slipways, 364
 stern-post rudder, 635 ff., 638, 651, 653 ff.
 trade, 518
 Europeans, 118, 205, 211, 475
 and the Great Wall, 46, 56
 fear of, 56 (c)
 Europocentric bias, 427, 429, 564 (a), 651 (c)
 'Ever-normal granaries', 524
 Ewbank, T., 667
 Examinations, for artisans, 480
 Excavations, 5 (d), 43, 107, 281
 Anyang, 123
 Canton, 127, 448, 649
 Chhang-an, 6 (d)
 Chhêngtu, 129 (c)
 Corinth, 364
 Dedigama, Ceylon, 137 (d)
 Liang-shan Hsien, 479
 near Nanking, 483
 Pan-pho-tshun, 121
 Shih-Chai Shan, 447
 'Thirteen Tombs', 144 (a)
 Tien, 447
 'Exhalations', 545 (b)
 Explanation of the World Map. See *Khun Yü Thu Shuo*
 Explanations concerning the Buildings referred to in the Personal Conduct Ritual. See *I Li Shih Kung*
 Explanations of Meanings and Sounds of Words occurring in the Nine Chapters of Mathematical Art. See *Chiu Chang Suan Shu Yin I*
Explicatio Sphaeris Caelestis. See *Thien Wên Lüeh*
 Exploitation of the Works of Nature. See *Thien Kung Khai Wu*
 Exploration. See *Voyages of discovery*
 Explosives, 433
 See also *Gunpowder*
 Exports, 496-7
 Extensive Records of Remarkable Things. See *Kuang Chih*
 van Eyck, H., 610 (k)
 Ezekiel (prophet), 57
 Fa-Chhao (+ 11th-century Buddhist monk), 154
 Fa-Hsien (Buddhist pilgrim, fl. +399), 188, 197, 657 (c)
 Fa Tshao (Regulations Department), 37
 Fable of the pygmies and the cranes, 538 (d)
 Face-saving Re-definitions, Dept of, 564 (a), 651 (c)
 Fair Winds for Escort. See *Shun Fêng Hsiang Sung*
 Faiyūm Depression, 365 (f)
 'False stern', 399, 401
 Family accommodation, on merchant ships, 453, 470
 Family system, and building patterns, 69
 Famines, 220, 241, 465 (i)
 Famous Shipboard Prescriptions. See *Hai Shang Ming Fang*
Fan (a sail), 599-600
 Fan An-Chi (+8th-century hydraulic engineer), 308 (b)
 Fan Chan (King of Cambodia, +250), 449
 Fan Chhêng-Ta (scholar and traveller, fl. +1177), 75 (i), 192, 247, 303 (d), 346
 Fan Chih-Ku (Sung shipwright), 460
 Fan Chung-Yen (scholar and official, +989 to +1052), 324
 Fan Shêng-Chih (agriculturalist, fl. -32 to -7), 246

- Fan Shêng-Chih Shu* (The Book of Fan Shêng-Chih on Agriculture), 246
- Fan Sui (road engineer, -260), 22
- 'Fan-tail' boat (Shen-po-tzu), 394, 435
- Fan-Thien Ssu (Brahma-Heaven Temple), 141
- Fan Tzu-Yuan (official, +1073), 336
- Fang (tie-beam), 92, 411 (b)
- Fang-Chang (island), 551-2
- Fang chhuan*. See Double-hulled craft
- Fang Chi (2), 217
- Fang Chin (official, fl. +1026), 321
- Fang Chung-Hsün (Director of the Ministry of Works, c. +1023), 352-3
- Fang Ho Tsou I* (Water Conservancy Memorials to the Throne), 326
- Fang Hsin-Ju (c. +1200), 662
- Fang I-Chih (scientific encyclopaedist, d. +1671), 51
- Fang I Po-Shih (Regius Professor of Geographical Communications), 31
- Fang Kuan-Chhêng (Chhing writer), 323
- Fang Yen* (Dictionary of Local Expressions), 623, 639
- Fargue's laws, 231
- Farmhouses, 132-3
- Fascinés. See *Sao*
- Faza, 514
- Feather dresses, 543
- Feathering (of oars), 623
- Fei Hsin (naval secretary, +1436), 492
- Fei-hu Pass, 26
- Fei-hu Tao, 28
- Fei Kun (writer, c. +1190), 132
- Fei-Sha Yen (Flying Sands Spillway), 289, 292
- Fei Tiao (Minister of Agriculture, c. -28), 330
- Fên (river), 16, 245, 252, 273 ff.
- Fen drainage, 249 (b), 264 (b)
- Fên-shui Tshun, 301
- Fending-irons. See Grappling irons
- Fêng bridge, 150
- Fêng Chhuang Hsiao Tu* (Maple-Tree Window Memories), 320
- Fêng Chün (hydraulic engineer, c. -30), 329
- Fêng-hsien, 19-20
- Fêng-shui*. See Geomancy
- Fêng Thu Chi* (Record of People and Places), 165
- Fêngchow, 202-3
- Ferghana, 198 (d), 265 (b)
- Fergusson, J., 167
- Fernandes, Álvaro (navigator, +1446), 505
- Fernandes, João (explorer), 535
- Ferry-boats, 8 (d), 32, 185 (f), 204
in fresco painting, 456
- Fertile Crescent, 374
- Fertilisers, 215, 224-5, 227, 230-1, 260, 267, 546 (i)
- Feudal bureaucratism, 32, 69, 161 (d), 214, 216, 225, 234-5, 251, 261, 263, 319, 375 (b)
and voyages of exploration, 517-18
- Feudal lords, 258 ff.
- Feudalism, 71, 245, 250, 259, 263, 286
- 'Fever-bark tree' (*Cinchona*), 531
- A Few Points in the Vast Subject of the 'Tribute of Yü'. See *Yü Kung Chui Chih*
- 'Flod at london brigge', 584
- Fibonacci, 67
- Fifth Month festival, 436
- The Fighting-Ship Commander. See Marquis Yen
- Fiji, sails of, 590, 606
- Filial piety, 223
- Finger-breadths, measurement by. See *Chih* and *chio*
- 'Finis Bellis' (Dutch man-of-war), 684
- Finley, James, 208 (g)
- Fire-arrows. See Incendiary weapons
- Fire-fighting equipment, 449, 576, 667
- Fire-setting, 26, 45, 278, 287
- Fire-ships, 426, 449 (c), 667
- Firearms, 203, 688
- Fireproof construction, 103
- First Punic War, 442
- Firüz Shâh Tughluq (r. +1351 to +1388), 367
- Fischereibuch*, 438
- Fish-shaped hulls, 418-19
- Fish Snout (Yü Tsui), 288, 295
- Fish-trap, 147
- Fisheries, 255 (a), 267
- Fisheries conservancy, 671
- 'Fishermen's Bridge', Pin-chhuan, 193
- Fishing-boats, 422, 430
of Amoy, 439 (a)
- Fistuca*, 152
- Fitzgerald, C. P., 598; (6), 437; (7a, b), 537
- Five Dynasties period. See Wu Tai period
- Five elements, 66, 91
- Five-Ensign Battleships, 424 (i), 451 (b), 689 ff.
- Five Essays on Water Conservancy. See *Shui Li Wu Lun*
- Five-Foot Way, 15-16
- Flags, 461, 471-2
- Flanders, 357
- Flash-locks, 215-16, 230, 275, 281, 302, 304 ff., 308, 313, 327, 345 ff., 350 ff., 357, 359 ff., 377, 412
- 'Flat-Bottomed Ship', 406-7
- Fleeting Gossip by the River Shêng. See *Shêng Shui Yen Than Lu*
- Floating baskets, 383-4, 386
- Floating bridges. See Bridges, pontoon
- Floating compass. See Magnetic compass
- Floating fortresses, 694-5
- 'Floating Mountain Dam', 339
- Flood-legends, 247 (f), 253
- Floods, 212, 215, 219, 221 ff., 228-9, 232 ff., 238, 245 ff., 251, 259, 278, 281, 292, 319, 329 ff.
seasons, 238 (d), 365
as weapon, 265-6, 270 (c)
- Flooring, 134
- Florence, 358
- bridges at, 175, 180-1
- 'Flow' and 'blockage' concepts, 268-9
- Flume bridges. See Bridges
- Flutes, 546 (f)
- 'Flying Barques.' See Tsou ko

INDEX

853

- 'Flying' bridges, 175, 183
 Flying buttresses, 103, 175
 'Flying dyke' (*pa*), 362
 Flying-Fox Road, 26
 Flying Sands Spillway. *See* Fei-Sha Yen
 Fo-Kuang Ssu (Buddha's Aureole Temple), 95 (c), 101, 128 (b), 130
 Folding chair. *See* Chairs
 Folk-songs, 4, 53 (a), 123-4
 Folklore. *See* Legends and folklore
 de Fontaney, Jean (Jesuit missionary, +1693), 531 (b), 629
 'Foot-boats', 311 (b)
 Footbridges, 149
 'Forbes' (British steamship), 599
 Forbes, R. J. (2), 660
 Fords Officers. *See* Chin Yuan
 Fore-and-aft rig, 451, 458, 463, 588 ff., 601, 617-18
 first origin of, in the Chinese culture area, 599, 604 (h)
 Fore-castle, 446
 Fore-sail. *See* Sails
 Foreign exchange, 526 (b)
 Foreign trade, 441, 443, 451, 453-4, 465, 484, 488-9, 518 (f), 526
 with Africa, 494 ff., 498, 505, 507 (a), 517
 in the Southern Seas, 536-7
 Foreigners in China, 46-7, 58, 148-9, 347, 350, 359, 363
 'Forked hand' struts. *See* Inverted V-braces
 Former Han (dynasty)
 hydraulic engineering, 227, 230, 264, 276, 280, 283, 303
 navigation, 562
 pottery, 443
 roads, 16, 18-19, 37
 ship models, 650
 ships, 445, 447, 450
 walls, 45
 Formosa. *See* Taiwan
 Forrest, Thomas (captain in the East India Company, 18th century), 609 (h)
 Fortifications, 18-19, 25, 30, 42, 45-6, 48, 51-2, 54, 72, 122 (a), 159, 272
 Roman, 47
 Fortified apartment-houses, 70, 133
 Fortified villages, 70
 Fortnightly periods, 578
 'Fortunate Isles', 552
 Forward Motions and Retrogradations of the Planets, a Sea People's Manual. *See* *Hai Chung Wu-Hsing Shun Ni*
 Fou Chiang (river), 206
 Fou-liang Hsien, 151
 Fou-ling, 333
Fou pan ('floating-boards'), 618
Fou thu (Buddha), 138 (d)
 Fouchow, 430-1
 Fountains, 206
 Fragmentary Notes on the Chinchuan Valley. *See* *Chin Chhuan So Chi*
 Frame (of building), 65, 97, 99, 103, 177
 iron-, 104
 technical terms, 99 (e)
 France
 architecture and building techniques, 40, 103
 canals, 377
 colonies, 524
 exploration, 536
 sails, 617
 trade, 521 (c)
 Franklin, Benjamin, 420
 Franks, 47 (a), 56, 313
 Fratres Pontifices, 32 (c)
 Freeman, J. R. (1), 237-8
 Frescoes
 Ajanta, 454
 Buddhist, 129
 Mai-chi Shan, 101 (b), 135 (i)
 Tunhuang, 46, 56 (c), 88-9, 113, 116, 121, 128 (a), 392 (a), 455-6, 606, 646, 663
 Frieze motifs, 116
 Frijoles, 542
 'Front', of Chinese buildings, 102
 Frontier walls, 48-9
 Frontinus (+ 1st-century architect), 145
 Fu Chhai (King of the State of Wu, -486), 271
 Fu chhuan (Fukienese warships), 681 (b)
 Fu-Chhun Chiang (Happy Spring River), 320
 Fu Chieh Ling (Prefect of Credentials and Tokens), 38
 Fu-fêng, 15, 19 (a)
 Fu-Lung Kuan. *See* Temples
 Fu-Nan. *See* Cambodia
Fu-Nan Chuan (An Account of Cambodia), 449
 Fu-Sang, 540 ff., 547, 549
 Fu-Sang tree, 541-2
 Fu-Têng (monk, +1540 to +1613), 154 (c)
 Fu Tsê-Hung (historian of waterways, +1725), 326-7
 Fu Tso-Yi (1), 217
 Fu-tzu-ling dam and reservoir, 222 (d)
 Fuchow, 74, 159
 freighter, 654
 pole-junk, 399 (d)
 Fuchs, W. (1), 499
Fugaku Hiyaku-kei (A Hundred Views of Mount Fujiyama), 437
 Fugl-Meyer, H., 152, 158, 163, 168, 191-2, 196, 206, 210, 664
Fuhr punts, 438 (g)
 Fukien, 17, 24, 31-2, 139, 148, 151, 173, 184, 284, 375, 416, 487
 megalithic beam bridges in, 153, 156-7, 158, 210
 rural dwellings in, 133-4
 ships, 414, 429-30, 631, 681 (b)
 shipyards, 480
 Fukien Ship-building Manual. *See* *Min Shêng... Chan Shao Chhuan... Thu Shuo*
 Fulton, Robert (1803), 433 (c)
 Funeral customs, 544-5

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-07060-7 - Science and Civilisation in China: Physics and Physical Technology: Part III:

Civil Engineering and Nautics

Joseph Needham, Wang Ling and Lu Gwei-Djen

Index

[More information](#)

854

Funicular railways, 185 (c)
 Furling, 597, 608
 Furnace lintels, 103
 Furniture, 135 (i), 136
 technical terms, 136
 Fusan Sound, sea-battle, 683
 Fusina, 365

Gabions, 151, 174, 177, 293, 295 (g), 321 ff., 329,
 331, 339 ff., 343
 technical terms, 341
 Gables, 65, 97, 102, 132
 Gadbury, John, 562
 Gaddi, Taddeo, 358 (e)
 Gaff-sails. *See* Sails
 St Gall, Abbey of, oldest European architectural
 plan at, 107
 Galle, 516
 stele at, 522–3
 Galleons. *See* Treasure-ships
 Gallery-roads. *See* 'Shelf-roads'
 Galley-slaves, 626–7
 Galleys, 625–7, 696
 da Gama, Vasco, 452 (b), 474, 490 (b), 506–7, 509,
 513–14, 518, 528, 571, 576, 610, 689 (a)
 Gambia, 558
 Games, divinatory, 544, 546
 Gan (river), 27, 222
 Gandhāra (modern Afghanistan), 188, 197–8
 art style, 137, 171
 Ganges, boats of the, 455, 655–6
 Ganges delta canals, 367
 Gangway, for boarding parties, 693
 Ganhsien, 27, 162–3
 Garcie, Pierre (navigator, +1483), 558
 Garden of Clear Ripples (Chhing I Yuan),
 61 (d)
 Garden of Peaceful Longevity (I Ho Yuan), 61 (d)
 Garden of Strange Things. *See* I Yuan
 Gardens, 62, 69, 74–5, 91
 Gargoyles, 102 (f)
 Gate-towers, 46
 Gates, 348
 Gaulish transport boat, 438
 Gauthey, E. M. (1), 181
 'Gazetteers', 88, 142 (e), 151, 154
 Geil, W. E. (2), 163
 General Anthology of Prose and Verse. *See* *Wên
 Hsüan*
 General Compass-Bearing Sailing Directions. *See*
 Chih Nan Chêng Fa
 General Discussion of the Flood-Protection
 Works in the Chhing-Li reign-period. *See*
 Chhing-Li Ho Fang Thung I
 General Discussion of the Protection Works
 along the Yellow River. *See* *Ho Fang Thung I*
 General View of Water Control. *See* *Ho Fang
 Chhüan Shu*
 General World Atlas. *See* *Yü Ti Tsung Thu*
 Geneva, Lake of, sails, 616
 Gennete, 332 (e)
 'Gentry', 261 (f)

INDEX

Genwa Kōkaisho (Navigation Manual of the
 Genwa reign-period), 382, 584 (d)
 Geographical Astrology of the 28 Lunar Man-
 sions, a Sea People's Manual. *See* *Hai
 Chung Erh-shih-pa Hsiu Kuo Fên*
 Geographical exploration as such, assumed Chinese
 lack of interest in, 529
 Geomancy, 53, 137, 166, 173, 491
 Geometry, 110, 113, 115 (b), 118, 145 (d), 146,
 149 (e), 378
 technical terms, 110–11
 Germany, 47, 358
 mining industry, 521 (c)
 ben Gerson, Levi (+1321), 557, 568
Ghe-song, ghe-gia and *ghe-nang* sailing-boats,
 385 (b), 620
 Giants' Tank (in Ceylon), 371
 Gibbon, Edward, 15, 28–9, 486
 Gilgit, 186, 188, 197
 Gill, W., 185, 206
 Gimbals, 559
 Ginger, 531 (c)
 di Giorgio, Francesco (*fl.* +1464 to +1497), 351 (d)
 Giraffes, 490, 530
 Gisarme, 508 (a)
 Glass, 103 (b), 104, 443
 and artificial pearls, 677
 from Fu-Sang, 541
 as means of exchange, 519
 Venetian, 570
 Glass-blowing, 570
 Glebe, 259
 Globes, terrestrial
 David Globe, 538, 540, 586
 Rosthorn Globe, 587
 Gnomon, 558 (b), 576 (e)
 Goa, 506, 522, 524
 Goad, John, 562
 Gobi Desert, 17–18, 48–9, 189, 279, 298, 587
 Godinho, Magalhães, 529, 653
 de Goeje, E. (1), 56
 Gog and Magog, 56–7
 Going up the River at the Spring Festival. *See*
 Chhing-Ming Shang Ho Thu
 Gokstad ship, 388, 636 (e)
 Gold
 from Africa, 521, 524
 as means of exchange, 422, 518–19, 521, 526,
 603
 shortage, 521 (c)
 thirst for, 529, 534
 Golden age, 245, 250
 Golden Chersonese, 612
 Golden Gate suspension bridge, 191 (d), 210
 Golden Mirror of the Flowing Waters. *See* *Hsing
 Shui Chün Chien*
 Golden Mirror of Medicine. *See* *I Tsung Chün
 Chien*
 Gomes, Diogo (navigator, *c.* +1483), 558 (b)
 Gonçalves, Antão (coloniser, +1441), 517 (g)
 Gonçalves, Lopo (navigator, +1474), 506
 Gondolas, 621

INDEX

855

- de Gonneville, Binot (explorer), 536 (b)
- Good Hope, Cape of. *See* Cape of Good Hope
- Goodchild, R. G. & Forbes, R. J., 660
- Gore (+1797), 419
- Gothin, M. L., 76
- Gothic arch. *See* Arches, pointed
- Gothic architecture, 61, 94, 102, 171 (g)
- Gotthard Pass, 23
- Gouda, pound-lock at, 353 (d)
- Gourds, in boat development, 384, 387
- Government
and development of highways, 2-3, 22, 30, 32
and irrigation works, 221, 234-5, 238, 241, 263 ff., 319
- 'Government slaves', 21 (h), 30
- Graduated poles, 331-2
- Graduations
vernier-type, 559
- Grain transport, 225-6, 230, 270, 273-4, 276, 299, 319, 415, 478
by canal and sea, 314, 644-5
by land and canal, 21, 32, 310, 410-11, 526
losses, 410, 478, 527
sea v. canal controversy, 478-9, 484, 526
- Grain transport ships, 330, 409 ff., 415, 452 (b), 484, 491, 621, 634, 644, 659
- Grain tribute. *See* Tax-grain
- Granada, 505 (b)
- Granaries, 214, 278, 310
- Grand Anicut, 367
- Grand Canal, 222, 225, 227, 238-9, 266, 272, 282 ff., 306-20, 358 ff., 377
bridges on, 152
flash-lock gates on, 347, 350
ships on, 360, 409-10, 431-2
Yuan summit section, 479 (f), 526
See also Hung Kou; Pien Chhü
- Grand Extensioner. *See* Sui Jen
- Grand Fleets (Ta tsung), 491, 509
- Grand Keeper of Equipages. *See* Thai Phu
- Grand Secretary. *See* Yü-Shih Ta-Fu
- Granet, M., 248, 253
- Grantham, A. E. (1), 58
- 'Grapevine bridges', 186 (a)
- Grapnels, 596, 645, 648
stone-weighted, 656-7
- 'Grappling-irons', 424 (i), 451 (b), 679, 683, 689, 691 ff.
technical terms, 690, 692
- Grasping the Reins. *See* Lan Phei Lu
- Gray, J. E. (1825), 675
- The Great Appendix (of the *I Ching*). *See* Ta Chüan
- Great Bear, 554 (f), 563 (b), 576, 583
- 'Great Britain' (iron steam-ship), 420, 655
- Great Commentary on the Shang Shu Chapters of the *Historical Classic*. *See* Shang Shu Ta Chuan
- Great Encyclopedia. *See* Thu Shu Chi Chhêng
- Great North Road, 8, 16
- Great Pharmacopoeia. *See* Pên Tshao Kang Mu
- Great Stone Bridge. *See* An-Chi Chhiao
- Great Wall, 14, 16-17, 26, 31, 40, 46 ff., 90, 189, 263 (c), 280, 282, 298
constructional methods, 50-1, 339
dimensions, 50 ff., 54-5
and Europeans, 46, 56
impenetrability of, 55
pre-Chhin, 54
- Great Wild Goose Pagoda. *See* Ta-Yen Tha
- Greece, and the Greeks, 136, 145, 159, 334 (f), 363, 365, 376, 486
architecture, 65, 90, 94, 100 (a), 102, 108, 167
art, 115 (b), 116 (d)
navigation, 379, 554 (f)
- Greek Fire, 684 (a)
- Greek galleys, 625, 626 (g)
- Greek sails, 607
- Greek ships, 389, 437 (c), 442, 446, 591, 608, 625 (e), 635, 653
- Green Islands, 501-2
- Green Waves Memoirs. *See* Chhing Po Tsa Chih
- Greensted church, Essex, 130 (c)
- Greenwich, National Maritime Museum, astro-labe at, 580
- Greenwich longitude, 587 (c)
- St Gregory Nazianzen, 609 (e)
- Grid system, 568, 581
- Groma, 331
- Grooved gates, 348
- Ground-sill, 92 (a)
- Ground sluices. *See* Sluice-gates
- Grubenmann brothers (*fl.* +1755), 166
- Guanine crystals, 677
- Guard-houses, 33, 129
- Gudgeons, 628, 632-3, 644-5
- Guide for Shipmasters. *See* Sŭngsŏn Chikchirok
- Guiding-star stretch-boards, 574
See Chhien hsing pan
- 'Guiding Stars' (*chhien hsing*), 565
- Guiding the reins... *See* Tshan Luan Lu
- de Guignes, Joseph (+1758), 540 ff.
- Guilds, 193 (b)
- Guillaume le Testu (explorer, +1531), 536 (b)
- Guinea arc, 513, 558
- Guinea coast, 505, 509, 511, 521
sea-ways to, 513
- Gujerat, 472
- Gun-founding, 514 (a)
- Gunkan Zusetsu* (Illustrated Account of (European) Warships), 381 (d), 402 (f)
- Gunpowder, 425 (g), 684
in civil engineering, for blasting, 287 (d), 343 (d)
weapons, 476, 477 (c), 516 (b), 576, 627
- Gunwales, 469 (j), 621
- Guppy, T. R. (1845), 420
- Gutkind, E. A., 71
- Gutzlaff's Pagoda, 142 (c)
- Gymnastics, 268
- Haddon, A. C. & Hornell, J. (1), 599
- Hadhramaut, 609
- Hadi Hasan (1), 454
- Hadrian (Roman emperor, +122), 28-9, 47 (b), 55

- Haematite, 545
 Haematology, 545
 Hague, F. (I), 675
Hai Chhao Thu Lun (Illustrated Discourse on the Tides), 584
 Hai-chhêng, ships from, 416
 Hai-chhiu ('sea-eel' or 'sea-serpent' ship), 416
Hai chou (sea-going junks), 415
Hai chung (expression), 561–2
Hai Chung Chan (Astrology (and Astronomy) of (the People in) the Midst of the Sea (or, of the Sailors)), 560
Hai Chung Erh-shih-pa Hsiu Chhen Fên (Bureaucratic Personnel Astrology of the 28 Lunar Mansions, a Sea People's Manual), 561
Hai Chung Erh-shih-pa Hsiu Kuo Fên (Geographical Astrology of the 28 Lunar Mansions, a Sea People's Manual), 561
Hai Chung Hsing Chan Hsing Thu (Star Charts and Stellar Prognostications of the Sea People), 561
Hai Chung Hsing Chan Yen (Verified Stellar Prognostications of the Sea People), 561
Hai Chung Jih Yueh Hui Hung Tsa Chan (Miscellaneous Prognostications by Sun, Moon, Comets and Rainbows, according to the Usage of the Sea People), 561
Hai Chung Wu-Hsing Ching Tsa-Shih (Manual of the Five Planets for Divers Occasions according to the Usage of the Sea People), 561
Hai Chung Wu-Hsing Shun Ni (The Forward Motions and Retrogradations of the Planets, a Sea People's Manual), 561
 Hai Ho (R.), 317
 Hai-hu ('Sea-Hawk Ships'), 424, 618, 686–7, 688
Hai jen ('sea-people', or 'sailors'), 560
Hai Nei Shih Chou Chi (Record of the Ten Sea Islands), 541
 Hai-phêng (junks), 420
Hai Shang Chi Yen Fang (Collected Well-trying Shipboard Prescriptions), 491 (h)
Hai Shang Ming Fang (Famous Shipboard Prescriptions), 491 (h)
Hai shen (edible sea-slugs), 538
Hai Tao Suan Ching (Sea Island Mathematical Classic), 332, 562 (c)
Hai Thang Lu (History of the (Chhien-Thang) Sea-wall), 323
Hai Thang Shuo (Discourse on Sea-Walls), 322
Hai Wu I Ming Chi (Strange Sea Names and Strange Sea Things), 618 (i)
 Hai-yang Shan, 300
Hai Yao Pên Tshao (Materia Medica of the Countries beyond the Seas), 531 (a)
Hai Yün Hsin Khao (New Investigation of Sea Transport), 420, 484
 Haichow, 362
 Hainan island
 junks, 439 (a), 465
 pearl fisheries, 668
 al-Haitham. *See* Ibn al-Haitham
 Hakka boats, 649 (f)
 Hakka people. *See* Tribal peoples
 Halberds, fixed to the hulls of boats, 680–1
 Halberdiers, 445
 Half-timber buildings, 97 (f)
 Half-tunnelling, 23
 Halley, Edmund (+1699), 559, 587, 673
 Hallstättersee boats, 438 (g)
 Haloes, solar, 582
 Halyards, 595 ff., 598, 604–5
 Hambantota, 370
 al-Hamdāni, Rashīd al-Dīn (*fl.* +1307), 38 (c), 313, 363
 Hami, 18
 Hammer-beam roofs, 99
 Hammock, 190 (a)
 Hamaoze, 608
 Han (dynasty), 70, 241, 258, 270, 443, 621
 architecture and building, 88–9, 125, 126–7, 132, 135, 139
 bricks, 40, 150
 bridges, 147, 150, 162, 166, 171, 197
 bronzes, 187
 cosmology, 585
 family production, 69
 furniture, 136
 gold stocks, 519
 Great Wall, 49–50, 52, 54
 hydraulic engineering, 217, 221, 229, 255, 273, 279, 282–3, 304, 359, 375
 irrigation, 232, 271–2
 palaces, 75, 86
 reliefs. *See* Reliefs
 roads, 16, 19, 21, 27 ff., 31, 33 (b), 35, 37, 49
 sailing craft, 390, 392, 436, 442, 444, 446, 679, 685
 sails, 600, 697
 survey methods, 332
 tomb-models, 105, 373 (b)
 tombs. *See* Tombs
 trade, 443–4
 water-transport, 226
 yulohs, 623
 Han (river), 8, 19, 21–2, 24, 26, 54, 222, 275, 281, 376 (a)
 Han (State), 271, 285
 Han Ai Ti. *See* Liu Hsin
 Han-chuang, 327
 Han Chung (Taoist adept, –215), 553 (d)
 Han-chung, 19, 21–2, 24
 Han Chung-Hui (magistrate, +1289), 312 (e), 313
 Han Hsin (Han general), 387
Han I Wên Chih Khao Chêng (Textual Criticism of the Former Han Bibliography), 561
 Han Kao Tsu. *See* Liu Pang
 Han Kou (Han-Country Conduit), 271, 282, 299 (b), 306, 309, 317, 375
 Han-ku Pass, 8
 Han-kuang, 27
 Han Kuang Wu Ti (Liu Hsiu, emperor, r. +25 to +57), 226

INDEX

857

- Han Ming Ti (Liu Chuang, emperor, *r.* +57 to +75), 196–7, 346
- Han Mu (imperial secretary, *fl.* –1), 228
- Han Shih-Chung (Sung admiral), 266 (f), 693 (a)
- Han Shih Tsu. *See* Liu Hsiu
- Han-tan, 8, 16, 43
- Han Tshen (Later Han civil engineer), 22
- Han Wên Ti (*r.* –179 to –157), 232
- Han Wu Ti (Liu Chhê, emperor, *r.* –141 to –87), 24, 129, 234, 273, 299 (d), 303, 333, 362, 441–2, 443, 621, 638, 669
- Han Yü (Thang Confucian scholar), 85 (a)
- Han Yüeh (Han general, *fl.* –111), 442
- Han Yung (Imperial Censor, +1468), 662
- Hance, H. F. W. (1), 151
- Handbook on the Course of the Grand Canal North of the Yangtze. *See* *Chiang Pei Yün Chhêng*
- Hand-rails, 186, 190
- Hang Ai (engineer, +1681), 295 (g)
- Hang-chou Fu Chih* (Historical Topography of Hangchow), 662
- Hangchow, 69, 87, 90 (c), 273, 279, 285, 307, 309 ff., 313, 318, 320, 353, 389, 476, 488, 584
city-maps of, 107 (c)
bridges of, 148
sampan, 681
- Hangchow Bay, 429
freighters, 633
- Hankow, 222, 275
- Hannibal, 39
- Hanoi, 27, 166, 561
- Harappa civilisation, 356 (h)
- Harbours, 660
of Greece and China contrasted, 625 (b)
- Harderwyk, seal of, 637
- Hariot, Thomas (+1599), 559
- al-Ḥarīrī, Abū Muḥammad al-Qāsim (+1054 to +1122), 651
- Harness, 663
- Harpalus (engineer, *c.* –480), 159 (f)
- Hartgill, George, 562
- Hata Sadanori (Japanese sailor, 1803), 393
- Havell, E. B., 167
- Hawaii, 552
sails, 606, 615
- Hawkins, (marine inventor, 1821), 658
- Hawkins, G. & Gibson-Hill, C. A., 613
- Heating, central, 134–5
steam, 104 (c)
- Hebrew flood-legend, 247 (f)
- Hei Shui (Black River), 42, 199, 233
- von Heidenstam, H. (1), 323
- von Heine-Geldern, R., 547
- Helicoidal flow, 231
- Hellenistic age, 474
- Hellenistic ships, 635
- Hellenistic tomb reliefs, 615
- Hêng Chhiao, 150
- Hêng-yang, 8, 15, 28, 300
- Henry VII (king of England, +1495), 660
- Henry the Navigator, Prince, 452 (b), 471 (a), 474, 503 ff., 535, 557
motives, 529
and the treatment of African captives, 517 (g)
- Herodotus, 34, 159 (f), 607 (c)
- Heron of Alexandria (mechanician, *c.* +60), 570 (c)
- de Herrera, Antonio (+1622), 590 (d)
- Herrmann, A. (4), 444
- Hewson, J. B. (1), 382
- Heyerdahl, T., 547
- Hideyoshi (Japanese general, +1592), 683
- Hieron of Syracuse (–225), 666
- Hildebrand, J. R. (1), 59
- Himalayan region, 146, 162, 166, 185, 189, 206
- Hindu–Arabic numerals, 556
- Hindu Kush, 187–8
- Hinduism, 522, 674
- Hippopeds, 14 (a)
- Hiroshige (Japanese artist), 185
- Hirth, F. (9), 111; (12), 112
- Hirth, F. & Rockhill, W. W., 549
- Hisbiya*, 384–5
- Historia Architectur* (+1725), 208
- Historical Anecdotes in Rhymed Prose. *See* *Maqāmāt*
- Historical Classic. *See* *Shu Ching*
- Historical Map of Chhang-an. *See* *Chhang-an Thu Chi*
- Historical Record. *See* *Shih Chi*
- Historical Records of the Five Dynasties Period. *See* *Wu Tai Shih Chi*
- Historical Topography of Hangchow. *See* *Hang-chou Fu Chih*
- History of the Administrative Statutes of the Ming Dynasty. *See* *Ta Ming Hui Tien*
- A History of the Ages since the Time of the *Spring-and-Autumn Annals*. *See* *Chhun Chhiu Hou Chuan*
- History of the (Chhien-Thang) Sea-Wall. *See* *Hai Thang Lu*
- History of the Chin Dynasty. *See* *Chin Shu*
- History of the City of Eternal Peace. *See* *Chhang-an Chih*
- History of the Former Han Dynasty. *See* *Chhien Han Shu*
- History of the Later Han Dynasty. *See* *Hou Han Shu*
- History of the Liang Dynasty. *See* *Liang Shu*
- History of the Ming Dynasty. *See* *Ming Shih*
- History of the (Northern) Wei Dynasty. *See* *Wei Shu*
- History of the Southern Chhi Dynasty. *See* *Nan Chhi Shu*
- History of the Southern Dynasties. *See* *Nan Shih*
- History of the Sui Dynasty. *See* *Sui Shu*
- History of the Sung Dynasty. *See* *Sung Shih*
- History of the Yuan Dynasty. *See* *Yuan Shih*
- Ho (river). *See* Yellow River
- Ho Chhü Chi Wên* (Notes on Rivers and Canals), 327
- Ho Chhü Shu (Bureau of Rivers and Canals), 268

- Ho Chiang (river), 203
Ho Fang Chhüan Shu or *Ho Fang I Lan Chio* (General View of Water Control), 325
Ho Fang Chih (Study of River Protection Works), 326
Ho Fang Thung I (A General Discussion of the Protection Works along the Yellow River), 325
Ho Fang Tsé Yao, chapter 10 of *Chih Ho Fang Lüeh*, q.v.
 Ho Hsin-Kêng (master builder), 85
 Ho Kuang-Yuan (+ 10th-century writer), 81 (d)
Ho Kung Chhi Chü Thu Shuo (Illustrations and Explanations of the Techniques of Water Conservancy and Civil Engineering), 263, 327–8, 337–8, 596
 Ho Lung Mên ('Closing the Dragon Gate'), 341
 Ho-phu. *See* Lienchow
 Ho-Pi-Ssu. *See* Qobis
Ho Shih Chi (Collected Materials on River Control Works), 325
 Ho Shui (river), 270
 Ho-thang, commune headquarters at, 97 (g)
 Ho-Thi Shih-Chê (Comptrollers of River and Dyke Works), 268
 Ho-Tung Ssu. *See* Temples
 Ho-Yang Chhiao, 160 (g), 161
 Hodometer, 332, 421 (b)
 Hogging, 437
 Hokiji pagoda, 130 (b)
 Hokusai, 437 (e)
 Ho Lu (King of Wu State, r. –514 to –496), 678
 Holien Pho-Pho (King of the State of Hsia, d. +425), 42, 172 (d)
 'Holing-derricks.' *See* 'Grappling-irons'
 'Holing-irons.' *See* 'Grappling-irons'
 Holland. *See* Netherlands
 Holmes, T. R., 608
 Holy Inquisition, 522
 Home Insurance Building, Chicago, 104
 Homer, 657
Hon-il Kangni Yöktae Kukto chi To (Map of the Territories of the One World and the Capitals of the Countries in Successive Ages), 499
 Honan, 133, 174, 226, 262, 272, 275, 283, 330
 Honei, 226, 234, 271
 Hongkong, 439, 485–6, 550
 fishing-junks, 656
 de Honnecourt, Villard (+ 13th-century engineer), 85 (b), 107, 166, 296
 'Hook-fenders' (*kou chhiang*), 681–2
 Hookworm infestation, 545 (g)
 Hope, Linton (c. 1890), 592 (c)
 Hopei, 8, 43, 47–8, 50, 132, 178, 181, 184, 276, 281, 284, 336, 453
 Hopkins, L. C. (5), 186; (14), 147; (25), 186
 Horian ships, 433 ff., 447
 Horizon, 586
 Horizontal lines
 in Amerindian architecture, 543
 in Chinese architecture, 61, 67, 543
 Hormuz, 465
 Hornbill ivory, 537
 Hornell, J. (1), 383 ff., 681; (7), 393, 395; (18), 435
 'Horse Latitudes', 511
 Horses, 30, 37, 521
 Indo-Scythian, 449
 pack-, 26
 post-, 30, 38
 transportation by, 216
 carried on warships, 460
 Horticulture, 75
 Horwitz, H. T. (6), 54
 Hōryūji temple, Japan, 93 (c), 95 (c), 101, 128 (c), 130 (b)
 Hou Chao (State), 49
 Hou Han (period). *See* Later Han period
Hou Han Shu (History of the Later Han Dynasty), 138, 390 (i), 560–1, 562, 639, 670, 679
 Hou Hsien (diplomat, c. +1411), 489, 491
 Hou Kung ('Taoist adept, –215), 553 (d)
 Hou-pan, 430
Hou Shan Than Tshung (Hou-Shan Table Talk), 128 (d)
 Hour-glass, 556, 570
 Houses. *See* Dwelling houses, Farmhouses
 Houtman, Cornelius (+ 1596), 521 (h)
 Hsi (despatches), 35
 Hsi-chhang, 25
 Hsi Chhin (Western Chhin), 49
 Hsi Chiang. *See* West River
 Hsi-Chin Chhiao, 165
Hsi Ching Fu (Ode on the Western Capital), 86
 Hsi-Hsia (State), 161
 Hsi-ning, 49
Hsi Shih Chi (Notes on an Embassy to the West), 335
 Hsi Shu (nautical writer, + 1501), 482
Hsi thu, or *hsi jang*. *See* 'Living earth'
 Hsi Tsêng-Yün (civil engineer, + 1733), 326
Hsi Tu Fu (Ode on the Western Capital), 86, 129
Hsi-Yang Chhao Kung Tien Lu (Records of the Tributary Countries of the Western Oceans), 492, 567
Hsi-Yang Chi (Voyages and Traffics... in the Western Oceans), 480 (a), 494, 516 (b)
Hsi-Yang Fan Kuo Chih (Record of the Foreign Countries in the Western Oceans), 492
 Hsia (semi-legendary – 2nd-millennium dynasty), 258
 Hsia (+ 5th-century dynasty), 42
 Hsia people. *See* Tribal peoples
 Hsia-chih mountains, 245
 Hsia Kuei (Sung painter), 150, 392 (a), 663
 Hsia-pien, 26
 Hsia Ying-Kung (+ 11th-century governor), 164
 Hsia Yuan-Chi (Confucian scholar, fl. + 1424), 525, 530
 Hsiahou Fu-Lang (ritualist, + 600), 80
 Hsiang (Mount), 253
 Hsiang (river), 8, 222, 300 ff., 305–6
 Hsiang Chung (official, c. + 1477), 525

INDEX

859

- Hsiang Kung (+ 10th-century bridge engineer), 174
- Hsiang-Kuo Ssu temple. *See* Temples
- Hsiang-Lin (unidentified country), 444
- Hsiang-yang, 8, 16, 28, 275
- Hsiang ying*, 634
- Hsiang Yü, 226, 553 (d)
- 'Hsiangyang phao' (counterweighted trebuchet), 516 (b)
- Hsiao (Duke of Chhin, - 350), 261
- Hsiao Ho (general, *fl.* - 207), 226, 285 (a)
- Hsiao-ho-chhang bridge, 206
- Hsiao Hsün (Divisional Director of the Ministry of Works, + 1368), 87
- Hsiao-i ('Little wing' ships), 678
- Hsiao-I Chhiao, 160 (g)
- Hsiao Phu-Nu (Liao general), 161
- Hsiao-thang Shan tombs. *See* Tombs
- Hsiao Thien-Phing (spillway), 300
- Hsiao-thun, foundation of a Shang building at, 122
- Hsiao Wên (Prince, of Chhin, *fl.* - 250), 288
- Hsiao Wên Ti (Han emperor). *See* Han Wên Ti
- Hsiao Yen (Liang emperor). *See* Liang Wu Ti
- Hsiao Yen Tha (pagoda), 139
- Hsieh An (premier of Chin, *fl.* + 385), 349 (b), 352
- Hsieh Chan-Jen (scholar), 429
- Hsieh chu* (slanting struts). *See* Inverted V-braces
- Hsieh Ho (theoretician of painting, + 5th century), 112
- Hsieh Hsüan (general and philosopher, *fl.* + 384), 352 (c), 363, 365
- Hsieh Kan-Thang (*fl.* 1866 to 1896), 173, 177, 203
- Hsieh Kung. *See* Hsieh An
- Hsieh Kung-Yen (Official of the Ministry of Rites, *c.* + 1086), 675
- Hsieh Thai-Fêng (magistrate in Szechuan, *fl.* + 1774), 185 (c)
- Hsien* (Immortals). *See* Immortals
- Hsien* (city), 72
- Hsien chhuan ('Ship of the immortals'), 425
- Hsien Li (prince of the Ai-lao barbarians, + 47), 390
- Hsien Shan Lou Ko Thu (Towers and Halls of the Mountain of the Immortals), 106
- Hsien-yang, 7, 14-15, 150
- Hsien-Yang Wang (Prince of Hsien-yang). *See* Sa'id Ajall Shams-al-Din
- Hsien Yuan. *See* Huang Ti
- Hsimên Pao (humanitarian statesman and hydraulic engineer, *d.* - 387), 271, 374
- Hsin Chi Mu Shu* (New Collection of Timber-work Treatises), 84 (c)
- Hsin-chiang-khou, 484
- Hsin-fêng Tank, 282
- Hsin-hsien, 276
- Hsin-khai mountains, 16
- Hsin-na* (Khmer boat), 450
- Hsin-ning, 163
- Hsin Shu-Chhieh (2), 247
- Hsin Thang Shu* (New History of the Thang Dynasty), 495
- Hsin Wu Tai Shih* (New History of the Five Dynasties Period), 202
- Hsing-an, 301 ff.
- Hsing Chha Shêng Lan* ('Triumphant Visions of the Starry Raft'), 492
- Hsing-Chhêng (monk, + 1583), 142 (c)
- Hsing-Chhing Kung palace, 107
- Hsing-Chiao Ssu (temple). *See* Temples
- Hsing-i, 181
- Hsing Shui Chin Chien* (Golden Mirror of the Flowing Waters), 326-7, 348
- Hsing Yen (farmer), 231
- Hsinhsiang, 237-8
- Hsiu* (lunar mansions). *See* Lunar mansions
- Hsiu* (resting-place), 120
- Hsiu Chhü Chi* (Record of the Repairs to the Magic Canal), 305 (d)
- Hsiu Fang So Chih* (Brief Memoir on Dyke Repairs), 341-2
- Hsiu Hai Thang I* (Discussions on Sea-Wall Repair and Maintenance), 322
- Hsiung-erh Shan, 8
- Hsiung Ming-Yü (*fl.* + 1648), 585
- Hsiung-Nu. *See* Tribal peoples, Huns
- Hsiung San-Pa. *See* de Ursis, Sabbatino
- Hsiung Thai (bridge engineer, *fl.* + 1705), 202
- Hsü Chên-Ming (Ming engineer), 235 (d)
- Hsü Chhêng (admiral, - 486), 440
- Hsü Ching (ambassador, *fl.* + 1124), 381, 430, 602-3, 641, 642-3, 659
- Hsü Ching-Chih (1), 60 (b)
- Hsü Chung (engineer, *fl.* + 1059), 153 (f)
- Hsü Chung-Shu (4), 187
- Hsü Fu (- 3rd-century Taoist explorer), 442 (h), 551 ff.
- Hsü Hsia-Kho (explorer and traveller, *fl.* + 1638), 203, 205
- Hsü Po (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* - 130), 215 (d), 273, 309, 375
- Hsü Shang (mathematician and hydraulic engineer, *c.* - 30), 329-30
- Hsü Sung (archaeologist, 1810), 88
- Hsü Tshung-Lung (bridge-builder, *fl.* + 1556), 173 (b)
- Hsü Tzu Chih Thung Chien Chhang Pien* (Continuation of the *Comprehensive Mirror (of History) for Aid in Government*), 315
- Hsü Wu-Kuei (Taoist recluse), 444
- Hsü Yi-Fang, 200 (f)
- Hsü Yung-An (*fl.* + 1105), 142 (e)
- Hsüan (King of Chhi, *r.* - 342 to - 324), 551
- Hsüan* (to hang), 72 (f)
- Hsüan-Chuang (Hsüan-Tsang, + 7th-century monk and traveller), 139, 198
- Hsüan-fang, 234, 378
- Hsüan-Ho Fêng Shih Kao-Li Thu Ching*. *See* *Kao-Li Thu Ching*
- Hsüan-Ho Hua Phu* (Hsüan-Ho Reign-Period Catalogue of the Paintings in the Imperial Collection), 107

- Hsüan-Ho Reign-Period Catalogue of the Paintings in the Imperial Collection. See *Hsüan-Ho Hua Phu*.
- Hsüan lu* ('suspended road'), 23
- Hsüan mên* ('hanging gate'), 349, 351
- Hsüan-Miao Kuan (temple), 95 (c)
- Hsüan Tsung (Ming emperor, *r.* +1426 to +1435), 490-1, 525
- Hsüan-Ying (+8th-century Buddhist monk), 381
- Hsüchow, 270, 307, 354
- Hsüeh Chhin (high official, *fl.* +480), 273 (c), 278
- Hsüeh Chi Chiang Hsing 'Thu (Sailing on the River while the Sky is clearing after Snow), 649
- Hsün* (fathom), 255 (e)
- Hsün Hsien (Chin official), 282, 314
- Hsün Mao (Later Han civil engineer), 22
- Hsün-Yang Chi* (Memoirs of the Chiu-chiang District), 640
- Hu* (bushel), 230, 304, 441, 600, 641, 645
- Hu chhuan*. See Kettle-boat
- Hu chhuang* ('barbarian bed'), 136
- Hu Chia (1), 78
- Hu Huan-Yung, 237, 326
- Hu I (+10th-century painter and architectural draughtsman), 81, 106
- Hu-khou, 285
- Hu Kuang (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +1488 to +1505), 295 (g)
- Hu Lai-Kung (official, *fl.* +1580), 240 (a)
- Hu Shao-Chi (Chhing engineer), 32
- Hu Shih-Chiang, 132
- Hu Su (Hu Wu-Phing, official with Taoist naturalist interests, *fl.* +1027), 352-3
- Hu-Tho (river), 276, 281
- Hu-tzu, 232
- Hu Wei (historical hydrographer, *fl.* +1705), 326
- Hua Chhüan* (The Painting Basket), 113
- Hua-chia Ling (pass), 17
- Hua Chiang (river), 193
- Hua Hsin (sea-wall builder, *fl.* +84 to +87), 320
- Hua kai constellation, 567, 571, 583
- Hua-Ma Kuo, 198-9
- Hua Shan Chi* (Records of Mount Hua), 665
- Hua Shu* (Book of the Transformations (in Nature)), 641
- Hua thing*. See Lorcha
- Hua tzu* (small boat), 380 (b)
- Hua Yang Kuo Chih* (Records of the Country South of Mt Hua, Szechuan), 278 (f)
- Hua-Yen Ssu (temple), 95 (c), 106
- Hua-yin, 8
- Hua Yo (Ming engineer), 201
- Huai (river), 8, 190, 220, 222, 224-5, 227, 232, 269 ff., 275, 282, 307 ff., 311-12, 314, 317, 319, 326, 333, 453
- Huai-an, 262, 319, 354
- Huai-nan, 351, 451, 453
- Huai-Nan, Prince of, 553
- Huai Nan Tzu* (The Book of (the Prince of) Huai Nan), 245, 271, 299, 388 (a), 563 (b), 638, 676
- Huai-Ping (monk and engineer, *fl.* +1067), 153(d), 160
- Huai-Shêng Ssu (temple), 662
- Huai-yin, 309, 314-15, 318, 351
- Huai-yuan-chen, 202
- Huan, Duke of Chhi (-7th century), 222-3, 232
- Huan Khuan (*c.* -80), 638
- Huan Kung Kou, 314, 318-19
- Huan Than (sceptical philosopher, *c.* +20), 229 (a)
- Huan-Tou (legendary rebel), 248, 250
- Huan Wên (Chin general, *fl.* +369), 314
- Huancayo Valley, Peru, 190
- Huang Chhao (revolutionary leader, *fl.* +875 to +884), 320 (h), 496
- Huang-chia Lock, inscription at, 360 (e)
- Huang-Chih, 444
- Huang-Chih, King of (*fl.* +6), 444
- Huang Ho. See Yellow River
- Huang Ho Thu, 237 (e)
- Huang Huai-Hsin (eunuch, +1073), 336, 660
- Huang Kan (Neo-Confucian philosopher, *c.* +1197), 105
- Huang Kuang-Shêng (sea-wall builder and engineering writer, *fl.* +1542), 322
- Huang lung*. See Yellow Dragon ships
- Huang mên* (civil service and court personnel), 443
- Huang Phan-Lung (bridge-builder), 173
- Huang Piao (+1544), 688 (a)
- Huang Po-Ssu (writer on joinery, *c.* +1090), 136
- Huang-shan, 430
- Huang Shêng-Tsêng (naval secretary, +1520), 492, 530
- Huang-thien-tang, battle of, 683 (b), 693 (a)
- Huang Ti (legendary emperor), 395-6
- Huang Ti Nei Ching* (The Yellow Emperor's Manual of Corporeal Medicine), 326
- Huang Ti Nei Ching, Thai Su* (The Original Recension of the Yellow Emperor's Manual of Corporeal Medicine), 82 (e)
- Huang Tsu (commander, +208), 449 (e), 657 (d)
- Huang Yün Liang Ho Thu* (Maps and Diagrams of the Yellow River and the Grand Canal), 326
- Huangpo Conservancy Board, 158
- Huchow
- pearl industry, 675-6
- transport boats in, 415
- Hudson suspension bridge, 191 (d)
- Hues, Robert (+1594), 585
- Hughes, E. R. (9), 86, 129
- Hui, Prince of Liang, 270
- Hui-Chhao (monk, +726), 23
- Hui-Chiao (monk, *c.* +530), 459 (e)
- Hui-chung Kung, 16
- Hui-Hui Yao Fang* (Pharmaceutical Prescriptions of the Muslims), 531
- Hui-Lin (+8th-century monk), 381, 459, 465
- Hui-Sêng (monk and traveller, *fl.* +519), 197
- Hui-Shen (monk and traveller, +499), 540, 542
- Hui Shih (logician), 387
- Hui-thung-chhiao, 200

INDEX

861

- Hui Thung Ho (Union Link Channel), 313-14, 318-19
- Hui Ti (dethroned Ming emperor, *r.* +1398 to +1402), 487-8, 489, 529
- Hui Tsung (Sung emperor, *r.* +1100 to +1126), 107
- Hui Tzu. *See* Hui Shih
- Hui-Yuan Chhiao, 284 (d)
- Huihsien bronze bowl, 126 (a)
- Hülāgu Khan, 361, 440
- Hulls, 383, 389 ff., 437
 carvel-built, 461
 double, 392 (c), 420 (d), 441 (c)
 of junks, 391, 399
 of Liang-shan ship, 479
 multiple, 694-5
 sewn, 458, 460, 465
 shape, 417-20, 429-30, 608, 618, 681, 686, 698
 sheathing of, 664-5, 682, 697-8
 timber for, 414
- Human body, proportions of the, 68 (i), 82 (e)
- Human motive power, 625-7
- Human scale, in Chinese architecture, 67, 82
- 'Humber keel', 590 (a), 593 (b), 607
- Hummel, A. W. (17), 203; (20), 86
- Hun-Thien. *See* Kauṇḍinya
- Hun Thien Fu* (Ode on the Celestial Sphere), 541
- Hunan, 26, 28, 31, 132-3, 163-4, 166, 210, 222, 300, 303
 ships in, 415
- A Hundred Chants of the Southern Seas. *See* *Nan Hai Pai Yung*
- A Hundred Views of Mt Fujiyama. *See* *Fugaku Hujaku-Kei*
- Hundredweight. *See* *Chung*
- Hung Hsüeh Yin Yuan Thu Chi* (Illustrated Record of Memoirs of the Events which had to happen in my Life), 262-3
- Hung Kou (Canal of the Wild Geese, or Far-Flung Conduit), 269-70, 274, 304, 306 ff., 374
- Hung Liang-Chi (+18th-century scholar), 381, 403, 484
- Hung Mai (+12th-century scholar), 679
- Hung-nung, 8
- Hung Pao (eunuch, +1432), 491
- Hung-tsê Lake, 307, 309, 314, 333, 363
- Hungarian lakes, boats of, 621
- Huns. *See* Tribal peoples
- Hupei, 132, 284
 floating bridge in, 442
 ships in, 415, 453
- Hussite, the Anonymous, engineer (*c.* +1430), 673
- Hyakumamben Chionji, 95 (c)
- Hydraulic engineering, 1, 105, 211 ff., 673
 earliest works, 375
 influences on Europe, 361
 rival schools of thought in, 230-1, 249, 376
 technical terms, 342 (d), 372
- Hydraulic mill. *See* Water-mills
- Hydraulic trip-hammer. *See* Water-mills
- Hydro-electric power, 215-16, 279
- Hydrodynamics, 231, 378
- Hypocaust heating, 135
- Hyponomoi*, 334 (f)
- I* (chair), 136 (d)
- I* (character), 186
- I* (strakes), 403
- I* peoples. *See* Tribal peoples
- I-chêng, 352-3
- I-chhang, 222
- I Chhieh Ching Yin I* (Sounds and Meanings in the Vinaya), 381, 458-9
- I Chi*, chapter of the *Shu Ching*, q.v.
- I Ching* (Book of Changes), 125, 203, 396
- I-chou, 16, 26
- I-Fan (monk, *fl.* +1705), 202
- I Ho Yuan. *See* Summer Palace
- I-Hsing (+8th-century monk, mathematician and astronomer), 567
- I-Hsing So Chhiao, 187
- I Jen (Almoners-General), 35
- I Li Shih Kung* (Explanations concerning the Buildings referred to in the Personal Conduct Ritual), 81
- I Lou Ho (R.), 309, 317
- I-Mou-Hsün (Nao Chao king, *r.* +778 to +808), 199-200
- I-Nan tombs, 140 (a)
- I-Po (monk, *fl.* +1059), 153 (f)
- I shê*, 186
- I Tsung Chin Chien* (Golden Mirror of Medicine), 82
- I-wu, 18, 28
- I Yü Chih* (Record of Strange Countries), 493-4
- I Yü Thu Chih* (Illustrated Record of Strange Countries), 493, 531, 533
- I Yuan* (Garden of Strange Things), 422
- Iberian peninsula, 503
- Ibn al-Āṣ, 'Amr, 465 (i)
- Ibn Baṭṭūṭah (*c.* +1348), 380 (a), 423, 451, 465, 469-70, 479, 590 (a), 602, 624
- Ibn al-Haitham (Alhazen, physicist, +965 to +1039), 115 (b)
- Ibn al-Ḥasan al-Ḥāsib, Muḥammad, 334 (h)
- Ibn Hudhail, Muḥammad (+1252), 581
- Ibn Ḥusain, Sīdī 'Alī Re'is (Turkish admiral, +1553), 571
- Ibn Khalaf, 'Alī (Toledan astronomer, *c.* +1040), 580
- Ibn Khurdādhbih (geographer, *d. c.* +912), 56, 502
- Ibn Mājid, Shihāb al-Dīn Aḥmad (Arab pilot, +1498), 506, 528, 558, 567, 571, 576
- Ibn Rustah, Aḥmad (Persian geographer, +903), 585
- Ice-breakers, 311 (b)
- Ichang 'Watershoes', 392
- Ideographic script, 544
- al-Idrīsī, Abū' Abdallāh, 475, 496, 502 (e), 503
- Ikeda Kōun (+1618), 382, 584 (d)
- Ilkhan of Persia (+1267), 585

- Illiteracy, and Chinese shipwrights, 382, 403, 413
- Illustrated Account of Brick- and Tile-Making. See *Tsao Chuan Thu Shuo*
- Illustrated Account of (European) Warships. See *Gunkan Zukai*
- Illustrated Account of the Exploits of General Wu. See *Wu Chiang-chün Thu Shuo*
- Illustrated Account of Yellow River Floods and Measures against them. See *Chih Ho Thu Lüeh*
- Illustrated Description of the Jetavana Monastery in Srāvasti in Central India. See *Chung Thien-Chu Shê-Wei Kuo Chih-Yuan Ssu Thu Ching*
- Illustrated Discourse on the Tides. See *Hai Chhao Thu Lun*
- Illustrated Explanation of the (Construction of the Vessels of the) Coastal Defence Fleet... See *Min Shêng Shui-Shih...Chan Shao Chhuan Chih Thu Shuo*
- Illustrated London News*, 485
- Illustrated Manual of Civil Engineering. See *Shui Li Thu Ching*
- Illustrated Record of an Embassy to Korea. See *Kao-Li Thu Ching*
- Illustrated Record of Memoirs of the Events which had to happen in my Life. See *Hung Hsüeh Yin Yuan Thu Chi*
- Illustrated Record of Strange Countries. See *I Yü Thu Chih*
- Illustrated Study of Temple Planning. See *Miao Chih Thu Khao*
- Illustrated Treatise on the Method of setting up Ordination Altars used in Kuan-Chung. See *Kuan-Chung Chhuang-Li Chieh-Thau Thu Ching*
- Illustrated Treatise on the Plans, Technical Terms, and Uses of the Houses, Palaces, Temples, and other buildings described in the various Classics. See *Chün Ching Kung Shih Thu*
- Illustrations and Explanations of the Techniques of Water Conservancy and Civil Engineering. See *Ho Kung Chhi Chü Thu Shuo*
- Illustrations of the Three Rituals. See *San Li Thu*
- Imjin River, cable bridge, 190 (d)
- Immanence, and Chinese architecture, 61 (b), 69
- Immortality, drugs of, 442 (h), 551 ff.
- Immortals (*hsien*), 551–2
- Imperial Commissariat for the Control and Organisation of Coastal Areas. See *Yen Hai Chih-Chih Shih-Ssu*
- Imperial highways, 7–8, 14–15, 25, 32
- Imperial University, 31, 315
- Imperial workshops, 81, 89
- Imperialism, 535
- Important Arts for the People's Welfare. See *Chhi Min Yao Shu*
- Imports, 496
- İnbâ' al-Miyâh al-Khafiya* (The Bringing of the Hidden Waters to the Surface), 334 (h)
- Incas, 2, 5 (b), 184 (e), 190, 394 (c), 544 (e)
- Incendiary weapons, 449, 576, 600 (e), 667, 684, 688
- Incense gums, 496, 530
- Incense-sticks, for time-keeping, 570
- India, and Indians, 23, 58, 72 (c), 118, 139, 496, 504, 582
- boats and ships, 385, 388 ff., 437, 447, 451, 465 (i), 486, 635 (f), 655–6
- bridges, 186, 189, 197
- building, 90, 128, 142, 167, 171 (g)
- diving techniques, 674
- hydraulic engineering, 365, 367–8, 373
- pilots, 568, 576
- Portuguese aggression against, 514
- rainfall, 220
- religion, 522
- roads, 3, 5 (b)
- rudders, 655–6
- sails, 607
- stüpa*, 58, 69, 128–9, 137, 140
- trade, 518–19
- voyages to, 449, 474, 489, 506, 528, 555
- Indian missionaries, 451
- Indian Ocean, 385, 402, 443, 477, 486, 501–2, 503, 506–7, 513, 557, 560, 576, 637
- map of, 564
- oldest extant Portuguese chart of, 506 (c)
- pearl divers, 673
- sails, 589–90, 609, 612, 615 ff., 696
- ships, 472 ff.
- Indies, 504, 529
- Individual, emphasis on, in the European Renaissance, 115
- Indo-China, 33, 128, 441, 567, 582
- bronze drums from, 446, 646
- sailing-craft, 394 (c), 426, 438–9, 448, 459, 611, 613, 616–17
- voyages to, 487, 489
- Indo-Scythians, 449, 612 (g)
- Indonesia, and Indonesians, 128, 189, 486
- sails, 458, 589–90, 599, 601, 606, 608, 611 ff., 617, 696
- ships, 385, 457–8, 459, 681
- Indus (river), 188, 198
- Indus Valley, 40 (g), 438
- Inflated skin rafts. See *Rafts*
- Information on What is Beyond the Passes. See *Ling Wai Tai Ta*
- 'Informative' perspective drawing, 116
- al-Inkishäfi (+ 18th-century African poet), 497
- Inner Grand Canal, 317 (c)
- Inns, 36
- Inscriptions
- on Chiu-chhüan central drum-tower, 18 (c)
- on Chü-yung-kuan gate, 48 (a)
- on Chuko Liang's stele, 201 (a)
- on the 'gates' of Chieh-Shih (Stone Pillar Mountain), 299–300
- in the Erh Wang Miao, 249–50, 294–5
- on Galle stele, 522–3
- Han steles, 21–2
- by Hu Wu-Phing, 352–3
- on stele at Huang-chia Lock, 360 (e)
- on Lu Chhu's bridge, 178

INDEX

863

- Inscriptions (*cont.*)
 on the Lü-Jen Chhiao, 172
 on Mêng Chhang's temple, 671
 in Nan-Chhan Ssu, 130 (b)
 of the Phan Chiang Thieh Chhiao, 205 (b)
 San-mên Gorge, 23, 277
 Shan-hai-kuan gateway, 47-8
 Shang bone, 257
 Shang bronze, 186
 Shantan stele, 298
 at Suchow, 231
 on the Ta-Chhêng Tien, 132
 in Tunhuang cave-temples, 130 (f)
- Institutions and Customs at Hangchow. See *Wu Lin Chiu Shih*
- Institutions of the Yuan Dynasty. See *Yuan Ching Shih Ta Tien*
- Intake-towers. See *Bisi-kottuwa*
- Internal Manual of Naval Tactics. See *Shui Chan Ping Fa Nei Ching*
- International Congress of the History of Science, 485
- Invention and technical innovation, 343 (b), 350
 and fear of unemployment, 323 (b)
 double or simultaneous, 380
- Inverted siphon principle, 223 (a)
- Inverted V-braces, 99, 101-2, 127 (i), 130 (b), 141, 143, 171 (g)
- Investigation of the Seven States. See *Chhi Kuo Khao*
- Ipecacuanha, 531 (d)
- Ippen Shōnin (Buddhist monk, c. +1280), 647 (a)
- Ipswich, seal of, 636
- Iran. See *Persia*
- Iraq, 334, 361, 385
- Ireland, 70 (d)
 oars from, 622 (f)
- Iron
 anchor-weights, 160, 162 (b)
 chains, 161, 162 (b); as booms, 687-8, 694-5
 in dam-construction, 339
 export of, 496
 fastenings, in ship-building, 412 (i), 450 (c), 459 (h)
 pillars and beams, 103, 151
 plating, in warships, 687-8, 697
 stakes, for holing enemy ships, 694
- Iron age, 259 ff., 263
- Iron Bridge Commissioner, 198
- Iron-chain suspension bridge. See *Bridges*
- Iron industry, 86, 197-8, 201 (a), 281
 See also *Cast iron*, *Wrought iron*
- Iron ships and boats, 656, 665
 'Iron whip' (*thieh pien*), 693 (a)
- Iron-wood, 416, 645-6
- Irrigation and conservation works, 1, 24, 81 (a), 192, 211 ff., 246-7, 273, 361, 373, 524
 Assyrian, 356
 Ceylonese, 368 ff.
 conflict between agricultural and transportation interests, 53, 230 ff., 319
 earliest mentions of, 269, 271
 Egyptian, 365-6, 376 (b)
 and flood-protection, 229, 232 ff.
 Italian, 377
 Mesopotamian, 365-6
 and State power, 225 ff.
 technical terms, 260, 368
 and transportation, 230, 261
- Irrigation Canals of the Mount Tho District. See *Ssu Ming Tho-Shan Shui Li Pei Lan*
- Išba'* (finger-breadth or inch), 570
- Isidore of Seville (c. +630), 438
- Islam, 367, 504-5, 518, 523, 529, 533-4
- Isometric drawing, 113, 114 (c)
- Italy and Italians, 27, 357, 358, 361, 564
 irrigation works, 377
 trade, 521 (c)
- Ito Seizo (1), 59
- Jacob's Staff (surveying instrument), 332, 557, 568, 573, 576
 origin of, 574
- Jacome de Malhorca (*fl.* +1425), 471 (a)
- Jacquin (Paris rosary-maker, +1680), 677
- Jade, 544
- Jade Girdle Bridge, 171
- Jade Page Dictionary. See *Yü Phien*
- al-Jāhiz, Abū 'Uthmān 'Amr ibn Bahr (+9th-century writer), 361
- Jal, A. (1), 382, 635
- Jamāl al-Dīn (Persian astronomer, +1267), 585
- Jan-Chhiu kingdom, embassy from, 665
- Japan and Japanese, 14 (a), 136, 185, 205, 387, 416, 491, 527-8, 534, 541, 550, 552-3, 563, 582, 586, 684
 cultivated pearl industry, 676
 expeditions against, 477
 merchants, 453
 sails, 599
 ships and boats, 381-2, 393 (d), 416, 437
- Japanese architecture, 67, 70, 89 (e), 93 (c), 95 (c), 101, 101 (j), 128, 129 (i), 130 (b)
- Japanese drawings, of ships, 618
- Japanese embassies, 454, 643
- Japanese expeditions to Korea, 683
- Japanese legend, 386-7, 390
- Japanese monks, 453
- Japanese paintings, 647-8
- Japanese pirates, 528
- Jasmine, 245
- Java, 116, 416, 443, 457, 472, 477, 536, 549, 582, 586-7
 boats, 608
 tradition of two island Javas, 536 (b)
 voyages to, 489-90
- Javelins, 187
- Jaya-ganga, 370
- Jayam konda-cholapuram, reservoir at, 367, 368 (f)
- Jayavarman VII (Khmer King, r. +1181 to c. +1220), 460
- Jebel Hamrin range, 334-5
- Jehol, 48, 50

- Jen*, 255 (e)
 Jen Chhi-Yün (+18th-century architectural archaeologist), 81
 Jen Kuang (lexicographer, +1126), 402–3
 Jen Man (general, +33), 679
 Jen Mei-O (1), 229
 Jen Mên Tao. *See* Man-Gate Island
 Jen Tsung (Ming emperor, *r.* +1424 to +1425), 490, 525
 Jenney, W. le B., 104 (c)
 Jerusalem, 15
 Jesuits, 111, 197, 205, 578–9, 586–7
 Jib-sails. *See* Sails
Jih Chih Lu (Daily Additions to Knowledge), 429
 Jo-shui, 49, 173
 João I (King of Portugal, *r.* +1383 to +1433), 503
 João II (King of Portugal, *r.* +1481 to +1495), 513
 Job Accounting (Kung Hsien), section of *Ying Tsao Fa Shih*, q.v.
 Jofuku (Hsü Fu), tomb shrine of, 553
 John, Duke of Bourbon (+1415), 505
 John of Gaunt, 503
 John of Monte Corvino, 155, 651 (f)
 Dr Johnson, Samuel (+1778), 46
 Jointing, 98
 Jōjin (Japanese monk, *fl.* +1072), 105–6, 141 (a), 353–4, 360 (b), 363 (d)
 Jōmon period, 546 (l)
 Jordanus Catalanus (+1322), 468 (a), 472 (g), 536 (b)
 Joseph of Cranganore (+1555), 515 (c)
 Joseph's arm (of the Nile). *See* Baḥr Yūsuf
 'Joss-stick', for time-keeping, 570
 Jottings from the Eastern Side-Hall. *See* *Tung Hsien Pi Lu*
 Journal and Miscellany of (Su) Tung-Pho. *See* *Tung-Pho Chih Lin*
Journal of the Society for Research in Chinese Architecture, 60
 Journey into Szechuan. *See* *Ju Shu Chi*
 Jousse, Mathurin (writer on carpentry, *fl.* +1627), 85 (b)
 'Joyfull Newes out of the New-Found Worlde', 531
 Ju (river), 275, 376 (a)
 Ju-Pao (monk and architect, *d.* +815), 130
Ju Shu Chi (Journey into Szechuan), 138 (h), 349 (e)
 Juan Shen (+2nd-century ritualist), 80
 Juba (river), 495
 al-Jubb, 498, 506
 Julien, Stanislas (4), 665
 Julius Caesar, 151, 438
Jun (to irrigate), 251, 263
 Jun-ho-chi control installations, 222 (d)
 Jung (river). *See* Kuei Chiang
 Jung tribe. *See* Tribal peoples
 Jungyang, 19, 226, 235, 270, 276, 304, 312, 345
 Junks, 379–80, 383, 390 ff., 412, 420, 461, 463, 471–2, 482, 610
 articulated, 431–2
 copper-bottomed, 665
 long voyages by, 485–6
 origin of, 392 ff.
 river-, 397 ff., 431, 452 (b), 453, 466, 655, 687;
 familiar names for, 419–20; similarities with
 Egyptian craft, 433
 sea-going, 399, 409, 415–16, 422, 424, 429–30,
 447, 451, 453, 466 ff., 489–90, 496, 527, 603,
 634, 572
 shape, 417, 419–20
 technical terms, 397 ff.
 transport, 596
 war-, 408 (a), 427, 683
 Jurchen Chin (dynasty), 183, 282 ff., 409
Kagami-no-fune (berry-boats), 386
Kai Tsūshō-Kō (Studies on the Intercourse and Trade with Chinese and Barbarians), 381 (d), 402 (f)
Kairo Anshinroku (Safe Journeys on the High Seas), 382 (b), 584 (d)
 Kajengwa, coin-hoard from, 498
Kakam, 469–70
 Kala Oya (R.), 370
 Kalawewa, 370
 Kalgan, 54
 Kalinga anicut, 371
 Kalu Ganga (R.), 373
 Kamakura, temples at, 95 (c)
Kamāl, 557, 572, 574–5, 576
 Kamchatka, 121 (c), 486, 541
kan (shuttering frames), 38, 51
 Kan-Lu Ssu (Sweet Dew Temple), 142
 Kan Yen-Shou (general, –36), 18
 Kan Ying (Han traveller), 188
 Kanazawa Kanemitsu (nautical writer, +1766), 381 (d), 402 (f)
 Kanchapura, 444
 Kangaroo, 538 (d)
 Kanghai Island, fishing vessels from, 642
 Kanshih rapids, 451
 Kansu, 5, 16, 27, 38, 42, 47, 54, 132–3, 164, 207, 210, 233, 239, 298, 387
 'Kansu Corridor', 17
 Kantalai-wewa, 370
 Kao-chhang, 18
 Kao Chhao (assistant engineer, *c.* +1041), 342–3
 Kao Chhêng (+11th-century scholar), 159
 Kao-chhüeh, 52, 54
 Kao Hsien-Chih (Thang Korean general), 189
 Kao Hsüan (+12th-century engineer, builder of paddle-wheel warships), 476
 Kao I (official, *d.* +209), 126
 Kao Lei-Ssu (Chinese Jesuit, +1764), 358 (h)
Kao-Li Thu Ching (Illustrated Record of an Embassy to Korea), 385, 430, 463, 602, 605, 622, 641, 657 (e), 658
 Kao Liang Ho (R.), 312 (g)
 Kao-peï-tien, 348
Kao Sêng Chuan (Biographies of Outstanding Monks), 459
 Kao Tsu (Sui emperor, *r.* +581 to +604), 689–90

INDEX

865

- Kao Tsung (Sung emperor, *r.* +1127 to +1162), 132, 476, 488
- Kao Wên-Chien (official, *fl.* +1580), 240 (a)
- Kao Wên-Ting (+18th-century engineer), 328
- Kao Yü (*fl.* +768), 349 (b)
- Kao-yu, hanging-bridge lock at, 190 (f)
- Kaoliang fascines, 342
- Karafuto, 541
- Kāriz*, 334
- Karlgren, B. (12), 41, 44, 83, 213, 233
- Kashgar, 17–18
- Kashmir, 166, 189, 438
- Kaudulla-wewa, 370
- Kaunḍinya (Hindu cultural missionary), 449
- Kazakhstan, 18, 33
- Keel, 385, 388, 390, 419, 436, 438–9, 695
in Erh Hai Lake boats, 437
in Greek ships, 625 (e)
absence of, in junks, 397, 653
- Kelantan, boats from, 613
- Kellett, Capt. C. A., 485
- Kelling, R. (1), 59
- Kelling, R. & Schindler, B., 59, 136
- Kelson, 397, 436
- Kendrew, W. G. (1), 218
- Kêng* (nautical watches), 564 (e)
- Kêng Chih Thu* (Pictures of Tilling and Weaving), 111
- Kêng Hsin Yü Tshê* (Precious Secrets of the Realm of *Kêng* and *Hsin*), 531
- Kêng Hsün* (engineer and instrument-maker, +590), 586
- Kêng Shou-Chhang* (mathematician, *c.* –60), 270 (d)
- Kennedy's Principle, 231
- Kenya, 495, 497–8
- Kettle-boat, 387
- Key of Martial Art. See *Ping Chhien*
- Key economic areas, 19, 226–7, 269, 275, 279, 283, 284–5, 307, 311–12, 314, 375
- 'Keying' (Chinese junk), 485
- Khai Ho Chi* (Record of the Opening of the Canal), 308
- Khai Ming* (semi-legendary Szechuanese hydraulic engineer), 296 (b)
- Khai-Pao Tha* (pagoda), 81–2, 141
- Khai-Yuan Chan Ching* (Khai-Yuan reign-period Treatise on Astrology), 560
- Khai-Yuan Hsin Ho* (New Canal of the Khai-Yuan reign-period), 278
- Khai-Yuan* reign-period Treatise on Astrology. See *Khai-Yuan Chan Ching*
- Khaifêng, 87, 105, 220, 239, 262, 269, 279, 308, 311
bridges, 163, 165
pagodas, 81–2, 138 (i)
sack of, 84 (c), 463, 476
- al-Khamā'irī, Muhammad ibn Futūh (astrolabist, +1212), 581
- Khan* (niche), 236
- Khan Hsiang* (Critical Revision), section of *Ying Tso Fa Shih*, q.v.
- Khang* (centrally heated divan), 134–5, 136
- Khang Chi-Thien* (historical hydrographer, 1804), 326
- Khang-Hsi Dictionary*, 406, 605
- Khang Kung-Su* (+8th-century architect), 81
- Khang Thai* (traveller and writer on foreign countries, *c.* +260), 449–50, 472 (h), 602
- Khao Kung Chi* ('Artificers Record'), chapter of the *Chou Lu*, q.v.
- Khao kung tien*, section of the *Thu Shu Chi Chhêng*, q.v.
- Khazars, 208 (i)
- Khmers, 450
- Kho Chou* ('Retainer Ships'), 430, 602, 624 (d), 658
- Kho Tso Chui Yü* (Memorabilia of Nanking), 525
- Kho-Tsun* (+11th-century abbot), 154
- Khou Hsün* (Han Commissioner of Supplies), 226
- Khua O*, 251–2
- Khuan Shu* (official, –133), 553 (e)
- Khubilai Khan*. See *Shih Tsu*
- Khueichow*, 688
- Khun* (passages between buildings in a compound), 64 (a)
- Khun-ming Chhieh*, 362
- Khun Yü Thu Shuo* (Explanation of the World Map), 427, 510, 513
- Khung Thien-Chien* (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +1196), 284 (d)
- Khung Yen-Chou* (architect, *c.* +1120), 75 (i)
- Khunlun* (Malaysian), 459
- Khunlun Shan* (Mt.), 17, 121 (c), 280, 459 (e)
- '*Khunlun*' ships, 459
- Khunshan*, bridge at, 170
- Khur*, 161 (g)
- Kiachta, 421
- Kiel, seal of, 615
- Killick. See *Grapnel*, stone-weighted
- Kilwa, 497, 498, 506
- Kimble, G. H. (2), 501
- King-post, 95, 99, 101
- Kingdom of Women, 549–50
- King's College Chapel, Cambridge, 103
ship in stained glass window of, 610
- Kipling, Rudyard, 379 (b)
- Kircher, Athanasius (Jesuit scientist +1601 to +1680), 189, 208, 210
- Kirghiz tribe. See *Tribal peoples*
- Kitāb al-Buldān* (Book of the Countries), 465 (i)
- Kitāb al-Fawā'id*... (Book of Instructions on the Principles of Navigation), 571
- Kitāb al-Masālik w'al-Mamālik* (Book of Roads and Provinces), 56 (i)
- Kite, 187
- Kiti-buka (Mongol officer, +1258), 361
- Klebs, L., 433
- Kleitophon and Leucippe*, 615 (f)
- 'Knots per hour', 559 (j)
- Knotted cords, as computing device, 544 (h)
- Ko chhuan* (dagger-axe ships, or halberd ships), 440 (d), 680
- Ko Ching* (Ming bridge-builder), 173
- Ko Hêng* (astronomer, +222 to +280), 586

- Ko Hung (Pao Phu Tzu, eminent alchemist, c. +300), 386
- Ko Shan (writer on joinery, +1617), 136
- Kokonor (Lake), 49
- Kolandiophonta* (Khun-lun po), 460
- Kōmyōji temple, 85 (c)
- van Konijneburg, E. (1), 382
- Koran, 56
- Korea, and Koreans, 14 (a), 16, 25, 28, 33, 47, 52, 101, 139 (b), 441–2, 453–4, 562
- embassy to, 381, 385, 460, 602, 643, 649
- merchants, 453
- sailing craft of, 386, 391 (e), 396 (f), 401 (b), 416, 430 (g), 603, 637, 642–3, 658–9, 683–4, 697
- Korean orrery, 586
- Korean planisphere, 499
- Korean tombs. *See* Tombs
- Korean world-map, 568 (i)
- Koryaks. *See* Tribal peoples
- Kotmale Oya (R.), 372
- Kotte, 516
- Kou chhiang*. *See* 'Hook-fenders'
- Kou Chien (King of Yüeh, r. –496 to –470), 390 (i), 440 (d), 441
- Kou Hsüeh Chiang Li Hsiao Chi* (A Short Theoretical Study of Canal Construction), 326
- Kou shou (specialist artisans), 328
- Koxinga (Chêng Chhêng-Kung, +17th-century naval commander), 155, 528
- Kra isthmus, 444
- Krause, F. (1), 427
- Ku Chhi-Yuan (writer, +1628), 525
- Ku chhuan* (merchant-ships), 443
- Ku Khai-Chih (+4th-century painter), 114, 116, 119, 600, 649
- Ku Kung I Lu* (Description of the Palaces (of the Yuan Emperors)), 87
- Ku Li (+3rd-century officer), 640
- Ku-pei-khou, 48, 50, 282
- Ku Pho (+15th-century writer), 493
- Ku Shui (R.), 276
- Ku thieh chhiao, 202
- Ku-Ting Chhiao, 181
- Ku Tsu-Yü (historical geographer, +1667), 201
- Ku Yeh-Wang (lexicographer, c. +543), 644
- Ku-Yen Wu (+17th-century scholar), 429, 561
- Kua-pang Shan (Mt.), 483
- Kuala Trengganu, boats from, 613
- Kuan-chung, 14, 19, 24, 226, 227, 279, 375, 451
- Kuan Chung (–7th-century statesman), 222–3
- Kuan-Chung Chhuang-Li Chieh-Thau Thu Ching* (Illustrated Treatise on the Method of setting up Ordination Altars used in Kuan-chung), 70 (a)
- Kuan Khou Erh Lang (irrigation deity), 289 (d)
- Kuan-lieh* (pulley-blocks), 597, 604, 640
- Kuan-ling bridge, 203 ff.
- Kuan Lo (geomancer, +209 to +256), 641, 643
- Kuan-nei region, 149
- Kuan-phu, 321
- Kuan shih Ti Li Chih Mêng* (Master Kuan's Geomantic Instructor), 641
- Kuan-thao, 329
- Kuan-tso chhuan* (boats for travelling officials), 412
- Kuan Tu-Wei (Commandants of Passes and Barriers), 37
- Kuan Tzu* (The Writings of Master Kuan), 222, 232
- Kuan-Yin (Goddess of Mercy), 131, 204
- Kuan-Yin Ko, 131
- Kuan Yin Tzu* (The Book of Master Kuan Yin), 379
- Kuan Yü (general, +219), 623
- Kuang (province), 476
- Kuang (river), 315
- Kuang of Chin, Prince, 142 (a)
- Kuang Chi Chhü, 309
- Kuang Chih* (Extensive Records of Remarkable Things), 188, 677 (f)
- Kuang-chou (Canton), 33
- Kuang Lu (traveller, fl. +1585), 306
- Kuang-mao Shan (Mt.), 200
- Kuang-Shêng Ssu (temple), 101 (j)
- Kuang tha* (lighthouse), 662
- Kuang Thung Chhü, 309
- Kuang Wu Ti. *See* Liu Hsiu
- Kuang Ya* (dictionary), 459, 680
- Kuang Yü Thu* (Enlarged Terrestrial Atlas), 499, 501
- Kuang-yuan, 23
- Kuangsi, 25, 27–8, 31, 163–4, 299, 303
- Kuangsi Agricultural Experiment Station, 219
- Kuangtung, 8, 25–6, 28, 31, 162, 202, 222, 224, 284, 303, 394, 414, 442–3
- ships from, 416, 423, 429, 461, 620
- shipyards of, 480
- Kuanhsien, 196, 289, 329, 336
- bamboo suspension bridge at, 192–3, 249, 296
- temples at, 249, 291, 294, 296
- Kuanhsien irrigation system, 249, 288–9, 376, 390
- Kudara (i.e. Pakche) Plan, 70 (a)
- Kuei chhuan*. *See* 'Turtle ships'
- Kuei-chi, 8, 15
- Kuei Chiang (R.), 300, 303 ff.
- Kuei-Hsin Tsa Chih* (Miscellaneous Information from Kuei-Hsin Street), 51, 644
- Kuei-Shan, 333
- Kuei shui ao*, 350 (c)
- Kuei tou* (arch), 167 (h)
- Kuei tsu* (clan nobles), 263
- Kuhistan, 335
- Kuka-ilka. *See* Kuo Khan
- Kumbum, 49
- Kun (culture-hero), 247 ff., 251, 253, 296 (b)
- Kung* (palace hall), 72, 119
- Kung Chen (naval secretary, +1434), 492
- Kung Chhêng (Riders in Public Transport), 37
- Kung-Chhi (monk, +1583), 142 (c)
- Kung Chhin Chih (public halls and domestic apartments), 80–1
- Kung-Kung (legendary rebel), 248 ff.
- Kung-kuo-chhiao, 200

INDEX

867

- Kung Ming-Chih (writer, *c.* +1200), 349 (e)
 Kung Pu. *See* Ministry of Works
 Kung Shêng (scholar, *fl.* +36), 37
Kung Shih Khao (Study of Halls and Buildings), 81
 Kungchhantang, 266
 Kungshu Phan (engineer, *c.* –470), 81 (c), 681–2
 Kungsun Chhiao (minister of State, –525), 252 (b), 253, 260 (d)
 Kungsun Shu (general of Szechuan, +33), 442, 679
 Kungsun Yang (prime minister of Chhin, –350), 261
 Kungthan (river), 430
 Kunming, 16, 143
 Kunming Lakes, 15, 297, 447
 Kunming reservoirs, 297–8
 Kuo (river), 270
 Kuo Chhang (official, *c.* –30), 234, 329
Kuo Chhao Wên Lei (Classified Documents of the Present Dynasty), 667
 Kuo Chhung-Li, 494
 Kuo Chü (Han official), 126 (f)
 Kuo Chung-Shu (+10th-century painter and draughtsman), 81, 649
 Kuo-hsien, 181
 Kuo I-Kung (+4th-century writer), 188
 Kuo Jo-Hsü (writer on drawing and painting, *c.* +1074), 107 (a)
 Kuo Khan (Chinese general in Iraq, +1258), 361
 Kuo Mo-Jo (1), 259
 Kuo Pho (+4th-century commentator), 639, 649
 Kuo Shen-Hsi (Vice-Minister of Finance, *c.* +1041), 341, 343
 Kuo Shou-Ching (astronomer and engineer, *fl.* +1293), 312 ff., 319, 355
 Kuo Shu-Hsien (architectural painter), 106
 Kuo Tshung-I, 105
Kuo Yü (Discourses concerning the Warring States), 249
 Kuomintang, 60 (b), 266
 Kurile Is., 541
 Kurushio Current, 548 ff.
 Kusakabe no Koresuke (Japanese bronze-founder, +12th century), 130 (b)
 Kuwabara, Jitsuzo (1), 451, 465
 Kweichow, 15, 25, 27–8, 30–1, 132, 173, 181, 193, 203 ff., 210, 390
 Kweilin, 27, 162 (b), 171, 300
 Kwôn Kôn (Korean astronomer and geographer, +1402), 499
 Kyoto, temples at, 95 (c)
 Labour
 exploitation of, 626–7
 organisation of, 53, 55, 90, 221, 234, 250, 260 ff., 263 (c), 308
 productivity of, 259–60
 Lacquer, 518–19
 'Ladder bridges.' *See* *Thi chhiao*
 Ladrone Islands, 611
 Lagercrantz, S. (1), 387
 Lagos, 504
Lai Nan Lu (Record of a Journey to the South), 352
 Laichow, ships from, 416
 Lamaism, 206
 Lamprey, John (army doctor, 1866), 58, 65 (a), 102
 Lan-Chin Thieh Chhiao, 196, 197 (c), 201
Lan chou ('wickerwork boat'), 386
Lan Phei Lu (Grasping the Reins), 75 (i)
 Lanchow, 49, 52, 74, 137, 272, 280, 298
 bridges at, 161, 163, 165, 387
See also Chin-chhêng
 Land survey, 259
 Land-tax. *See* Taxation
 Land tenure, 256, 261, 263
 Land utilisation, technical terms, 258
 Landing-craft, 460
 Landowners, 261 (f)
 Landscape models, 105
 Landscape painting. *See* Painting
 Landscape planning, 61, 69, 71, 143–4
 Landslides, 33 (b), 333
 Lang-chow, 15
 Lang Shih-Ning. *See* Castiglione, Joseph
 Lang-Tang Chhü, 270
 Lang-ya, 16
 Lang Ying (Ming writer), 241 (d)
 Lanthien canal, 347
Lao Hsüeh An Pi Chi (Notes from the Hall of Learned Old Age), 692
 Lao Kan (2), 21, 561–2
Lao-Tshan Yu Chi (The Travels of Lao-Tshan), 237 (c)
 Lappland, 676
 Lateen sails. *See* Sails
 Later Han (dynasty), 80, 86–7, 226–7, 276, 442
 bridges, 172
 hydraulic projects, 281
 road-building, 17, 22, 25–6, 29–30
 ship model, 650
 Later Liang (dynasty), 48, 266
 Later Yen (dynasty), 386
 Latitude (celestial), 555, 579, 583
 Latitude (terrestrial)
 charts, 560
 determination of, 557–8
 method of finding and running down, 567
 Lattices, 103–4, 149 (e)
 Lattimore, O., 54
 Laufer, B. (3), 135–6; (14), 542; (28), 111
 Laurentian world-map. *See* Portolano Laurenziano-Gaddiano
 Laurenziano Codex, 351
 Law, 249
 Le Mans cathedral, stained glass window medallions in, 636 (k)
 Lead, used for sheathing ship bottoms, 664, 697
 Leaving Pai-ti City at Dawn. *See* Tsao Fa Pai Ti Chhêng
 Lebrun, François (1835), 38 (d)
 Lecchi, A. (1), 357

- Lecomte, Louis (Jesuit missionary, +1655 to +1728), 22, 32–3, 142, 211–12, 347 (d), 350 (d), 363, 379, 404, 414 (b), 534 (b), 605, 624, 629–31, 634–5, 651
- Leeboards, 416, 431, 618–20, 686, 697–8
technical terms, 618–19
- Leeches (of sails), 596 ff.
- Leeward drift, 393, 618–19
- Leg-of-mutton sails. *See* Sails
- Legalists, 286
- Legendary rebels, 250
- Legends and folklore, 14 (a), 154, 247 ff., 456, 551–2, 665
- Lei family (Peking engineers and architects), 61 (d), 75 (i), 81
- Lei-chou peninsula, 27
- Lei Shih-Hsü (1832), 326
- Leichow, pearl fisheries, 668
- Lek (river), 357
- Leland, C. G. (1), 541–2
- Lenses, 379, 677
- Leonardo da Vinci, 109, 145 (d), 151, 159, 165–6, 182 (a), 356, 358, 376, 420 (d), 673, 684 (f), 693
- Lepanto, battle of. *See* Battles
- Letters of credit, 518 (e)
- Leupold, J. (+1724), 332 (e)
- Levant Company, 519 (d)
- 'Level-water locks', 360 (e)
- Levelling devices, 329 (b)
- Lever arms, 95, 99, 102, 109, 130 (b)
- Levers, 338
and steering-oar, 627 (c)
in stern-sweep, 629
- Levies. *See* Dues and levies
- Lhasa, 33
bridge, 151 (e), 163
- Li (measurement of length), 15, 27 (d), 31, 52 (i), 234 (d)
as sea-measure, 564 (e)
- Li (river), 299 (a), 300–1, 303, 305–6
- Li (technical term for sails), 605
- Li Ao (botanist and philosopher, c. +775 to +844), 82 (b), 352
- Li Chao-Chu (prefect, fl. +1724), 173
- Li Chao-Hsiang (nautical writer, +1553), 382 (d), 404, 482
- Li Chao-Tao (painter, fl. +670 to +730), 650 (a)
- Li Chao-Tê (+7th-century engineer), 172
- Li Chao-Thao (Sung inventor), 668, 670, 673
- Li Chen (magistrate, fl. c. +1470), 151
- Li Chêng (Sung painter), 112, 115
- Li Chhi-Wu (Prefect of Shenchow, +741), 278–9, 375 (a)
- Li Chhüan (Taoist and military technologist, +759), 159, 424, 618, 685
- Li Chhüan-Chhing (1), 181
- Li Chhui (fl. +1020), 266
- Li Chhun (bridge engineer, fl. +610), 172–3, 175, 178 ff.
- Li Chi (Sung mathematical commentator), 110 (f)
- Li Chi (Record of Rites), 63, 120
- Li Chieh (hydraulic engineer, fl. +714), 308 (b)
- Li Chieh (architect, fl. +1100), 84–5, 107, 110, 406
- Li Chien-Nung, 258
- Li Chih-Tsao (scientific collaborator of the Jesuits, +1603), 586
- Li Chih-Yuan (hydraulic engineer, fl. +762), 339
- Li Chung-Chhang (engineer, c. +1041), 344
- Li Erh (Han engineer), 277
- Li Erh-Lang (hydraulic engineer, fl. –230), 249, 288, 296
- Li Fang-Hsien (Ming military engineer), 204–5
- Li Hao-Wên (imperial tutor, fl. +1330), 88
- Li Hsieh (d. 1940), 217, 265, 287 (e)
- Li Hsien (Thang commentator), 621, 680
- Li Hsin-Hêng (+17th-century writer), 189
- Li Hsing (Ming naval commander), 491
- Li Hsü (+1505 to +1592), 574–5
- Li Hsün (+10th-century scholar), 531 (a)
- Li Hua-Lung (engineer, +16th century), 344
- Li Huai-I (+10th-century ironmaster), 81
- Li Hui-Lin (1), 475
- Li I-Chih. *See* Li Hsieh
- Li Jo-Kuei (architectural archaeologist, fl. +1193), 81
- Li Kho (official, late +15th century), 298
- Li Khuan (bridge-builder, fl. +1041), 153 (f)
- Li Khuei (economic statesman, fl. –440 to –380), 261, 271, 374
- Li Ko-Fei (writer on gardens, c. +1080), 87
- Li Ku (engineer, c. +954), 343–4
- Li Kung-I (hydraulic engineer, +1073), 336
- Li Lei-Ssu. *See* Buglio, Louis
- Li-ling, 163
- Li Nu (scholar, +1337), 495 (g)
- Li Pai (Thang poet), 23, 222 (a)
- Li Phei (+3rd-century commentator), 638
- Li Pho (hydraulic engineer, fl. +825), 305, 361–2
- Li Phu (sea-wall engineer, fl. +1007), 314 (f), 321
- Li Pi (road-builder, fl. +785), 278
- Li Ping (governor and engineer, fl. –250), 193, 249, 272, 288 ff., 293, 296, 304, 329
- Li Ping (hydraulic engineer, c. +1745), 328
- Li Sao (Elegy on Encountering Sorrow), 250
- Li Shan, 105
- Li Shao-Chün (alchemist, –133), 553 (e)
- Li Shêng-Po, 644
- Li Shih-Chen (pharmaceutical naturalist, +1518 to +1593), 531 (a), 533
- Li Shih-Chung (hydraulic engineer, fl. +1059), 306 (c)
- Li Shih-Lu (hydraulic engineer, c. +1775), 341–2
- Li Shu-Thien *et al.* (1), 217
- Li Shun-Fêng (Thang mathematician and astronomer, +7th century), 541
- Li Sung (painter, fl. +1185 to +1215), 631–2
- Li Ta-Kuei, 331 (f), 332
- Li-Tai *Thung Chien Chi Lan* (Essentials of the Comprehensive Mirror of History), 487
- Li Tao (historian, c. +1180), 315 (e)
- Li Tao-Yuan (geographer, c. +500), 172, 189, 300, 324

INDEX

869

- Li Tê-Yü (geographer and minister of State, +787 to +849), 142
- Li Tsê-Min (geographer, *c.* +1325), 499
- Li Wei (Sung hydraulic engineer), 325
- Li Wên (artist, *fl.* +1590), 244
- Li Yo (*fl.* +195), 277
- Li Yü-Chhing (Sung engineer), 32
- Li Yün Ho. *See* Inner Grand Canal
- Liang (bridge), 147
- Liang (dynasty), 339, 379, 457
- Liang Chê Hai Thang Thung Chih* (Comprehensive History and Geography of the Sea-Walls of the Two Chekiangs), 323
- Liang Chêng, 80
- Liang Chhi Man Chih* (Bridge Pool Essays), 132
- Liang Chi (*d.* +159), 172
- Liang-chieh-thou. *See* Articulated boats
- Liang Ching Hsin Chi* (New Records of the Two Capitals), 88
- Liang Jui (engineer, *fl.* +587), 308
- Liang Kung Yen (dyke), 308
- Liang Mêng-Lung (nautical writer, *fl.* +1579), 420, 484
- Liang-shan Hsien, +14th-century ship found at, 479
- Liang Shu* (History of the Liang Dynasty), 540
- Liang Ssu-Chhêng (1), 60; (2), 130, 181; (3), 60, 62, 103, 130, 181, 192; (4), 130; (5), 181; (6), 88; (9), 67
- Liang-thou chhuan* (Double-headed ship), 425
- Liang Ting (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +995), 287
- Liang Wu Ti (*r.* +502 to +549), 190
- Liangchow, 49
- Liangshan, 241
- Liao (cargo unit), 481
- Liao (dynasty), 37, 67–8, 106, 131, 227, 279, 284, 311, 460, 651
- Liao (river), 52, 54
- Liao Chhiung-Ching (Ming geomancer), 144 (c)
- Liao-tung, 31, 52
- Liao Yung-Chung (commander, *c.* +1370), 687–8
- Liaoning, 133
- Libraries, 106, 204
- Libros del Saber de Astronomia*, 581
- Licences, 465 (f)
- Lichiang, 198, 200
- Lieh Tzu* (Book of Master Lieh), 232, 251, 584 (e)
- Lien-huan chou*. *See* Articulated boats
- Lien Tan Lou. *See* 'Alchemy Tower'
- Lien-yün Tao. *See* Linked-Cloud Road
- Lienchow, 27
- pearl fisheries, 668 ff., 675
- Lifan, 185
- Life of Prince Tan of Yen. *See* *Yen Tan Tzu*
- Lifts, 104 (c)
- Light-beams, 624 (a)
- Light on Mysterious Things. *See* *Tung Ming Chi*
- Lighthouses, 660–2
- Lightning, as weather-sign, 583
- Limes Germaniae*, 47
- Limes Syriae*, 47
- Lin-chhing, 310, 313, 316, 318
- Kuan-Yin temple at, 360 (e)
- Lin-Chhing (Manchu official and hydraulic engineer, 1849), 262–3, 327–8, 596
- Lin-chia Pa, 318
- Lin Chih-Phing (Supervising Censor, +1129), 575
- Lin-I kingdom. *See* Annam
- Lin Kuei-Ho (Yin-Yang expert), 491 (g)
- Lin-thao, 52
- Lin Tsê-Hsü (statesman, 1840), 527
- Lin-tzu, 8, 15–16
- Lin Yü (+16th-century shipowner), 526 (f)
- Lincoln MS. (+1263), 628
- Lindera trees, 245
- Lindsay, Miss (1802), 40 (a)
- 'Line-closure', 640, 695
- Line-throwing, 205 (b)
- Ling* (hold decks or bulkheads), 403
- Ling Chhi Shui Khou (Magic Stream Water Opening), 300
- Ling Chhü (Magic Transport Canal), 299–306
- Ling Hsien* (The Spiritual Constitution of the Universe), 560
- Ling-Khung Chhiao, 181–2
- Ling-Kuang palace, 132
- Ling-ling, 8, 15, 27, 267
- remains of imperial highway near, 7 (e)
- Ling Piao Lu I* (Strange Southern Ways of Men and Things), 675
- Ling Thai (observatory), 129
- Ling Ti (Han emperor, *r.* +168 to +187), 136
- Ling Wai Tai Ta* (Information on What is Beyond the Passes), 303, 495, 549–50, 645, 668 (f), 672
- Ling-yin Shan, 347
- Ling-Yü (monk and traveller, *c.* +585), 70 (a)
- Ling Yün Thai, 104
- Lingozuon. *See* Li Chih-Tsao
- Link-work clock escapement, 569
- Linked-Cloud Road, 20 ff.
- Linnaeus, 676
- Lisbon, 475, 508, 533
- earthquake, 528
- Literary Expositor [dictionary]. *See* *Erh Ya*
- Literary South-Pointer. *See* *Shu Hsü Chih Nan*
- Litters, 30, 32, 82
- Liturgical and ceremonial texts, 80
- Liu Ai (official, *fl.* +195), 277
- Liu Chao (commentator, +502), 561
- Liu Chen (engineer, late +15th century), 298
- Liu Chêng (minister, +1270), 477 (b)
- Liu Chhang (last King of the Nan Han dynasty, *r.* +958 to +971), 672
- Liu Chhao (period), 75, 88, 105, 128–9
- steles, 646
- Liu-Chhiu islands, 393, 416, 477, 552
- Liu-Chhiu Kuo Lüeh* (Account of the Liu-Chhiu Islands), 382, 404–5, 484
- Liu-chia Kang, 487
- Liu Chih-Phing (1), 60
- Liu Ching-Shu (+5th-century writer), 422

- Liu Ching-yang (Sung cartographer), 88
 Liu-chung Lu. *See* Road through the Willows
 Liu Ê (1904), 237 (c)
 Liu Ho Tha, 662
 Liu Hsi (lexicographer, *d.* +120), 600, 623, 639
 Liu Hsin (Ai Ti, Former Han emperor, *r.* –6 to –1), 37, 235
 Liu Hsin-Chhi (Chin writer on the south), 665
 Liu Hsiu (emperor, founder of the Later Han dynasty). *See* Han Kuang Wu Ti
 Liu Hsün (writer on the south, *c.* +895), 675
 Liu Hui (mathematician, +263), 332
 Liu Jo-Yü (architectural historian, *c.* +1620), 87
 Liu-kuei (tribe of Turkic nomads). *See* Tribal peoples
 Liu Kuo-Hsüan (general, +1678), 155
 Liu-ling mountains, 16
 Liu Ming-Shu (4), 570
 Liu-pa, 20
 Liu Pang (first emperor of the Chhien Han, *r.* –206 to –195), 20 (f), 36, 226, 553 (d)
 Liu-phêng chhuan, 394
 Liu Piao (governor of Chingchow, *d.* +208), 449 (b)
 Liu Pin (Sung scholar), 681
 Liu Ta-Hsia (hydraulic engineer, later Vice-President of the War Office, *c.* +1477), 344, 525
 Liu Tao-Chen (Governor, *fl.* +436), 320
 Liu Thien-Ho (+16th-century engineer), 237 (e), 344
 Liu Thing-Chün (hydraulic engineer, +1118), 355 (e)
 Liu Tsung-Chhi (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +726), 308 (b)
 Liu Tsung-Yuan (Thang writer), 85 (a)
 Liu Tun-Chên (1), 163, 192; (3), 174; (4), 69, 132–3
 Liu Wên-Thai (pharmaceutical naturalist, +1505), 533
 Liu-yeh (river), 22
 Liu Yen, Prince of Chungshan (*d.* +88 or +90), 180
 Liu Yen (second King of the Nan Han dynasty, *r.* +917 to +942), 202–3, 694 (f)
 Liu Yen-Thang (official, +715 to +780), 310–11, 460
 Liu Yü (Liu Sung emperor, *r.* +420 to +422), 307
 Liutprand of Cremona (+10th century), 570
 'Living earth' (*hsi thu* or *hsi jang*), 253
 Llama, 475
 Lo river (in Honan), 22, 270, 276, 279, 285, 287, 307
 Lo river (Shensi), 333–4
 Lo Chêng-Fu (Sung hydraulic engineer), 314 (c)
 Lo-Hui Chhü, 287
 Lo-i (Wang-chhêng), 83
 Lo Jung-Pang, 6, 575 (d); (1), 481; (2), 525; (5), 481; (6), 30, 36, 217
 Lo Kai-Fu (1), 218
 Lo-lang, 25, 562
 Lo Mou-Têng (novelist, +1597), 480, 494
 Lo Pi (Yuan ship-builder), 420, 478
 Lo Shen Fu (Rhapsodic Ode on the Nymph of the Lo River), 649
 Lo-Yin Ho, 276
 Lo Ying (1), 169
 de Loarca, Miguel (*fl.* +1575), 159
 Local Gazetteer of the Sub-Prefecture of Ting-hai. *See* Ting-hai Thing Chih
 Lock gates, 304, 308, 310, 313, 316, 318, 344 ff., 354–5, 357, 377
 technical terms for, 354–5
 Locomotives, 365
 articulated, 432 (a)
 Lodestone, 563, 573
 Loess, 212, 220–1, 224–5, 228, 239, 253 (k), 280
 Log, perpetual or patent, 559 (l)
 Log (wooden), in the development of boats, 384, 388–9
 Log-crib piers, 151, 163
 Log-line, 559, 583
 Lombardy canals, 377–8
 London, 73 (b)
 Long-houses, 437
 Long March, 202
 Long Walls of the Piraeus, 19
 Longevity, drugs giving, 442 (h), 551 ff.
 Longitude, 560, 587
 determination of, 559
 Longobardi, Nicholas (Lung Hua-Min, +1623), 586
 Longships (penteconters), 608 (e)
 See also Viking longships
 Lop, 471
 Lop Nor lake, 18
 Lopez (Cape), 506
 Loqsi (Mongol engineer, *fl.* +1289), 313
 Lorcha, 439, 599, 698 (a)
 Lorenzetti, Ambrogio, of Siena (*fl.* +1344), 115 (b)
 Lost Records of the State of Yüeh. *See* Yüeh Chieh Shu
 Lothal, 356 (h)
 Lou Chhuan ('Tower-Ships'), 299, 424 ff., 440 (d), 441–2, 445–6, 449, 678 ff., 685, 687, 689, 691, 694
 Lou Hu (physician, *fl.* +4), 30 (d)
 Lou-Kuan-Thai (Taoist abbey). *See* Temples
 Lou-lan, 18, 28, 35
 Lou-lan people, 18
 Lou-Tien Chhiao, 181, 182 (b)
 Lou Yo (writer, *fl.* +1169), 178 (e), 333
 St Louis (+1226 to +1270), 72 (c), 556
 Louis de Bourbon, seal of, 474
 Lovegrove, H., 383
 Lowdermilk, W. G., 240
 Lowdermilk, W. G. & Wickes, D. R. (1), 228
 Lowerwork Unit, 82 ff.
 Loyang, 4, 15–16, 30, 54, 73 (b), 153, 226–7, 270, 276, 278–9, 282, 307
 bridges at, 148 (e), 153 ff., 161, 172
 ode on, 86
 pagoda at, 138

INDEX

871

- Lo-yang Chhieh-Lan Chi* (Description of the Buddhist Temples and Monasteries at Loyang), 87
- Lo-yang Kung Tien Pu* (Notebook on the Halls and Palaces of Lloyang), 105
- Lo-yang Ming Yuan Chi* (Record of the Celebrated Gardens of Loyang), 87
- Lu* (ashes of reeds), 253
- Lu* (rest-house, harvester's hut), 35–6, 122
- Lu* ('salaries'), 259
- Lu* (self-feathering propulsion oar), 620–1, 623
- Lu* (State), 54, 260, 272
- Lü family, rebellion of, 562
- Lu, Master (Taoist adept, –215), 553 (d)
- Lu, Prince of (–589), 259
- Lu Chhang-Ming (maker of tide-tables, +1056), 584
- Lu Chhêng-Ên (military and naval encyclopaedist, c. +1669), 583
- Lu chhuan (river-junk), 430–1
- Lu Chi (astronomer, fl. +225), 586
- Lu Chi (literary critic, fl. +302), 269
- Lü Chia (admiral, –115), 441 (h)
- Lü Chung-Su (Chhen general, +584), 690
- Lu Hsi (bridge-builder, fl. +1053), 153 (f)
- Lü Hsiang Kan Thung Chuan (Miscellaneous Temple Traditions according with the Vinaya Regulations), 70 (a)
- Lü Hung-Yin (nautical inventor, c. +1410), 668 (h)
- Lu I (engineer, c. +1510), 250 (b), 295 (g)
- Lu I Chi* (Strange Matters), 187
- Lü-Jen Chhiao (Bridge of Wayfaring Men), 172
- Lu Jung (writer, fl. +1475), 335
- Lu-Kou Chhiao, 181, 183
- Lu Kuei-Mêng (+9th-century poet), 671
- Lü-liang, 354, 363
- Lü Liang gorge, 251
- Lu Ling-Kuang Tien Fu (Ode on the Ling-Kuang Palace in the Land of Lu), 86
- Lü Mêng (general of Wu, +219), 623
- Lu Min (Thang engineer), 32
- Lu Pan. *See* Kungshu Phan
- Lu Pan Ching* (Lu Pan's Manual), 40
- Lu Pao-Tê (1877), 295 (g)
- Lü Phan (military and naval encyclopaedist, c. +1669), 583
- Lu Phi Kung (Immortal, patron saint of gallery-road builders), 23
- Lu Po-Tê (naval commander, –112), 441, 447
- Lü Shih Chhün Chhiu (Master Lü's Spring and Autumn Annals), 268
- Lü Ta-Fang (Sung cartographer), 88
- Lu Thing-Yung, 493
- Lu-thou* cane, 601, 604
- Lu-ting bridge, 196, 202
- Lu-to tribe. *See* Tribal peoples
- Lu Yu (writer, c. +1190), 349 (b), 623, 692
- Luan, 95 (a)
- Luan-chhêng, 181
- Luan Ta (thaumaturgical technician, –113), 553 (e)
- de Lucena, Vasco Fernandes (representative of the King of Portugal, +1485), 528
- Lucerne, 520 (e)
- Lucky days, 293, 480
- Lüeh-yang, 26
- Lug-sail. *See* Sails
- Luggers, 613–14
- Luleä, Lake, 676
- Lull, Raymond (philosopher-chemist, c. +1290), 556
- Lun Hêng* (Discourses Weighed in the Balance), 677
- Lun Yü* (Conversations and Discourses of Confucius), 186
- Lunar mansions (*hsiu*), 544 (a), 569, 583–4
- Lung*, 543 (c)
- Lung chhuan*. *See* Dragon-boats
- Lung-chhuan River bridge, 201–2, 205 (a)
- Lung Chiang Chhuan Chhang Chih* (Record of the Ship-building Yards on the Dragon River), 382 (d), 404, 482–3
- Lung-chou, 352
- Lung-hai railway, 8, 15
- Lung Hua-Min. *See* Longobardi, Nicholas
- Lung Ku (civil engineer, fl. –353), 54 (d)
- Lung ku*. *See* 'Dragon spine'
- Lung-shan culture, 120
- Lungmên gorge, 26 (c), 251, 280, 378
- Lungyen, 163
- Lusiad*, 507
- Luxury goods, 524, 671
- Lyons
- bridge at, 181
- water-jousts at, 636 (i)
- Ma-an Shan, 483
- Ma chhuan, 481
- Ma Chih-Chên (surveyor, fl. +1275), 313
- Ma-Ha-Mo-Tê. *See* Muhammad
- Ma Ho-Chih (Sung painter), 647 (b)
- Ma Hsien (bridge-builder, fl. +135), 172
- Ma Huai-Tê (of Khaifêng, Sung commander), 575
- Ma Huai-Tê (of Suchow), 574–5
- Ma Huan (naval secretary, fl. +1416 to +1435), 492 ff., 530
- Ma Lin (Sung painter), 647 (b)
- Ma-Lin-Ti, 498
- Ma Oya, 371–2
- Ma Pin (envoy, +1403), 491
- Ma Shu-Mou (organiser of labour, fl. +605), 308
- Ma-tao i, 202 (d)
- Ma-thou* ('horse-heads', i.e. jetties, etc.), 344
- Ma-Tsu. *See* Thien-Fei
- Ma Wan (artist, +1417), 341
- Ma-yang-tzu (river-junk), 397 ff., 419, 434, 447, 687
- Ma Yuan (general and admiral, fl. +41), 27, 303, 442, 447, 665
- Ma Yuan (Yuan painter), 392 (a)
- Ma Yuan-Fang (Vice-Director of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices, +1015), 344
- McAdam, 2

- Macao, 485, 507 (c), 524
ships from, 416, 439
- Macartney embassy (+1793), 33 (a), 347, 424
- Macassarese, visits to Australian coast, 537–8
- McGregor, J., 625
- Macrocosm–microcosm doctrine, 121 (c)
- Madagascar, 385, 458, 486, 494–5, 501, 511
sails, 606, 615
- Madeira, 505, 552
fishing-boats, 622 (f)
- Madras
dam at, 367
embassy to, 491
log rafts of, 394
- Madura Island canoes, 435 (e)
- Maelstrom, superstition of the, 549–50
- Mafia Is., 496–7
- de Magalhaens, Gabriel (Jesuit), 63, 134 (e), 135
- Magellan, 507 (c), 611
- Maggiore (Lake), 377
- Maghrib, 521 (c)
- Magic, 665
builders', 53 (a)
- Magic Canal. *See* Ling Chhü
- 'Magic Crossbow Division', 203
- Magical Islands, 442 (h), 551–2
- Magical technicians, 562
- Magnetic compass, 184, 332, 335 (f), 379, 382,
408, 416, 462, 509, 555–6, 569–70, 572, 576,
610, 637, 651, 653, 698
floating, 583
earliest use at sea, 562–3
impression that magnetic compass was not used
in southern waters, 572–3
- Magnetic compass needle, 563–4, 622 (g)
- Maguay plant, 542
- Mahāsēna (Ceylonese King, *r.* +277 to +304),
371
- Mahaveli Ganga, 371
- Mahendravarman I (Tamil Pallava King, *r.*
+642 to *c.* +650), 367
- Mahinda (Buddhist apostle of Ceylon, *d.* –204),
370
- al-Mahrī, Sulaimān (+1511), 571
- Mai-chi Shan, frescoes at, 101 (b), 135 (i)
- Maillart, Robert (19th-century engineer), 38 (d),
182
- Main-sail. *See* Sails
- Maize, 475, 520 (e), 533, 545 (f)
personification of, 544 (e)
- Malabar, 508
rafts from, 385
- Malacca, 489, 491, 507, 514, 521, 524, 603
temple at, 494
- Malāhida, 335
- Malar panshi*, 447, 456
- Malaya and Malaysians, 449, 459, 489, 565, 582
ships, 439, 451, 459, 507, 586, 613, 696
- Malayo-Indonesian culture, 437
- Maldivé Islands, 490, 501, 567
sails, 599, 607 (l), 698 (a)
- Malé, 567
- Malindi, 490, 495, 498, 506, 533, 571
- Mallet, Anatole (1888), 432 (a)
- Malone, C. B. (i), 86
- Malwatu Oya, 371
- Man-power. *See* Labour
- Man tribes. *See* Tribal peoples
- Man-Gate Island, 278
- Manashi-katama*, 386
- Manāzil*, 584
- Manchuria, 47, 52, 54, 143, 386
- Manchus, 528
- Manda, 514
- Mandeville, Sir John (+1362), 572
- Mandrocles of Samos (–514), 159, 162
- Mangonels, 152 (b), 693
- Mangu Khan (Mongol emperor, *r.* +1251 to
+1259), 199, 440
- Mannar, Giants' Tank near, 371
- Manor, 259
- Manrique, Sebastião (Augustinian), 535
- Mansard roof, 100
- al-Manṣūr (Caliph, *r.* +754 to +775), 465 (i)
- Manual of the Five Planets for Divers Occasions
according to the Usage of the Sea People. *See*
Hai Chung Wu-Hsing Ching Tsa-Shih
- Manual of the Martial Planet. *See* *Thai Pai Yin*
Ching
- Manure. *See* Fertilisers
- Mao* (technical term in ship class names), 680
- Mao Fêng-Tshai (bridge-builder), 173
- Mao I-Huan (Taoist), 187
- Mao I-Shêng (i), 169
- Mao Nai-Wên (i), 324
- Mao-thu. *See* 'Stomach-strikers'
- Mao Tsê-Tung, 251 (g)
- Mao Yuan-I (military and naval encyclopaedist,
+1628), 425–6, 493
- Maoris. *See* Tribal peoples
- Map of the Territories of the One World and the
Capitals of the Countries in Successive Ages.
See *Hon-il Kangni Yôktae Kukto chi To*
- Map of the Tracks of Yü the Great. *See* *Yü Chi*
Thu
- Maple-Tree Window Memories. *See* *Fêng*
Chuang Hsiao Tu
- Mapping, 332
of the heavens, 567–8
- Maps and Diagrams of the Yellow River and the
Grand Canal. *See* *Huang Yün Liang Ho Thu*
- Maps and plans, 88, 107, 112, 424, 602
by Chia Tan (+801), 568
of the Elahera anicut and canal, 373
oldest European architectural plan, 107
'Fish-Scale Maps,' 332 (d)
of Kweichow, 205
Lusitano-French maps (+16th century), 536 (b)
on steles, 107
of Suchow, 107
of Thang palaces, 107
world-maps: Catalan (+1375), 380 (a), 471–2,
479, 499; of Chuang Thing-Fu, 587; of Fra
Mauro; Camadollese (+1459), 471 ff., 499,

INDEX

873

- Maps and plans (*cont.*)
 world maps (*cont.*)
 501–2, 572; Korean, 568 (i); of Matteo Ricci, 540 (a)
 in the *Wu Pei Chih*, 498, 564 ff.
 Yü Chi Thu, 568
 Maps to illustrate the History of the City of Eternal Peace. See *Chhang-an Chih Thu*
Maqāmāt (Historical Anecdotes in Rhymed Prose), 651
 Marburg, Prussian Staatsbibliothek, manuscript in, 404
 March, B., 112 ff.
 Marguet, F. (1), 382
 Sta. Maria (Cape), 506
 ‘Santa Maria’ (Columbus’ ship), 405, 452 (b), 509
 Marine barometer. See Barometer
 Marine chronometer. See Chronometer
 Marine cordage, 191
 Mariners’ compass. See Magnetic compass
 Mariotte, Edme (+1686), 231
 Maritime charts, 568–9
 Maritime Odyssey. See *Phyohae Rok*
 Maritime trade. See Foreign trade
Markab, 608
 Marteloio, 556, 569
 Martesana Canal, 377
 Martini, Martin (Jesuit, *fl.* +1655), 150 (c), 159, 189, 205, 208
 Masonry, 65
 ‘reinforced’, 103
 Maspero, H. (8), 253–4; (17), 136
 Massa, 465 (i)
 Massachusetts, 208
 Master-Builders. See Chiang Jen
 Master-couple, 417 ff.
 Master Kuan’s Geomatic Instructor. See *Kuan shih Ti Li Chih Mêng*
 Master of Lands. See Ssu Thu
 Master Lü’s Spring and Autumn Annals. See *Lü Shih Chhun Chhiu*
 Master Tsochhiu’s Enlargement of the *Chhuan Chhiu*. See *Tso Chuan*
 Master of Works. See Ssu Khung
 Masts, 404, 406, 408, 412–13, 627
 bifid, 590
 bipod (or sheerleg), 423, 425, 434–5, 698
 collapsible, 431
 of grain-ships, 415
 multiple, 411 (l), 415, 468, 470, 472, 474, 508, 510, 527, 601–2, 606, 648, 696, 698
 of river-junks, 397 ff.
 staggering of, 401, 696, 698
 timber for, 414
 al-Mas’ūdī (geographer, +497), 465 (i), 661
 Mat-and-batten sails. See Sails
 Materia medica, 530, 533
 Materia Medica of the Countries beyond the Seas. See *Hai Yao Pên Tshao*
 Materials (Liao Li), section of *Ying Tsao Fa Shih*, q.v.
- Mathematical Treatise in Nine Sections. See *Shu Shu Chiu Chang*
 Mathematics and mathematicians, 330 ff.
 Mating festivals, 546 (h)
Matsya-dharma (law of the fishes), 674
 Mauretania, 514, 535
 Mauritius, 501
 Maurya India, 3, 72 (c), 367
 Maximilian I (Holy Roman Emperor, r. +1459 to +1519), 438
 Maya architecture, 90 (b)
 Maya calendars, 544
 Mayas, 167 (e), 447 (a), 542
 Mayers, W. F. (5), 423
 Maze Collection of Chinese ship models, 424, 439 (a), 652
 Meadows of Gold. See *Murūj al-Dhahab*
 Meares, John (+1788), 485
 Measurement
 and the heavenly bodies, 556–7
 time-and-distance, 556
 Meat, preservation of, 520
 Mecca, 490–1
Mechanica (c. –250), 608
 Mechanical clock, 556 (b), 569
Mechanics’ Magazine, 421
 Medhurst, W. H. (1), 41, 44, 83, 213, 233
 Medicine, 268, 530–1
 naval, 491 (h)
 Mediterranean, 29, 388–9, 468, 475–6, 517, 519, 651
 Indian influence on, 615, 617, 696
 navigation in the, 554 ff.
 sails, 590, 606–7, 609, 614
 ships, 620
 Megalithic bridges. See Bridges
 Mei (semi-legendary hydraulic engineer), 252 (b)
 Mei-hsien, 20, 22, 284 (d)
 Mekong (river), 25, 193, 196–7, 200, 222 (c), 386
 Melanesia, sails, 589, 591, 599, 606, 611, 616, 696
 Melinde, 498
 Melons, 246, 475
 Memoir on the Repair of the Yellow River Dykes in the Chih-Chêng reign-period. See *Chih-Chêng Ho Fang Chi*
 Memoirs of the Chiu-chiang District. See *Hsün-Yang Chi*
 Memoirs on Neglected Matters. See *Shih I Chi*
 Memorabilia of Nanking. See *Kho Tso Chui Yü*
 Memorials of the Salt Industry of Szechuan and its Control. See *Szechuan Yen Fa Chih*
 Menai Straits bridge, 208
 Mencius (Mêng Kho, –4th-century philosopher), 149, 241, 244, 248, 254, 256, 258 ff., 265, 270, 376 (a)
 de Mendonça, Cristóvão (+1522), 536
 de Mendonça, Lopes, 509
 de Mendoza, Gonzales (+1585), 149, 414 (b), 527 (b), 534 (b), 666
 Mêng (river), 230
 Mêng (technical term in ship class names), 680
 Mêng Chhang (Governor of Chiao-chih, c. +150), 671

- Mêng Chhi Pi Than* (Dream Pool Essays), 84, 230, 311 (b), 332, 341, 351
- Mêng-chhung ('Covered Swoopers'), 416 (b), 425, 449, 680, 686–7
- Mêng Chien (Thang Governor of Chhangchow), 229
- Mêng Liang Lu* (The Past seems a Dream), 87, 380 (b), 465 (g), 481, 621
- Mêng Mên gorge, 251
- Meng Tê-Yü (+ 10th-century architect), 81
- Mêng Thien (Chhin general, fl. –221), 8, 16, 31, 52–3, 249 (d), 272
- Mêng Tzu. *See* Mencius
- Mêng Tzu* (Book of Master Mêng (Mencius)), 186, 265
- Mercator, Gerard (cartographer, +1512 to +1594), 560, 568 (i), 569
- Merchant-ships, 440 (d), 461 ff., 484, 623
family accommodation on, 453, 470
- Merchants, 69 (b), 361, 453, 489
in Africa, 495–6, 517
private, 526
- Merckel, C., 365
- Mercury (metal), 603
- Meridian arc survey observations (+ 8th century), 567
- Meridians, 560, 578 ff.
prime, 587 (c)
- Merrimac (river), 208
- 'Merrimac' and 'Monitor', 684
- Mersenne, Marin (+ 1644), 231 (d)
- Mersey, 215 (d)
- Mertz, Henriette (1), 542 (f)
- Meru (Mount), 121 (c), 459 (e)
- Mesopotamia, 28, 167, 265 (a), 361
boats and ships, 386, 435–6, 698
building, 40 (b), 40 (g), 121
hydraulic engineering, 356, 365–6
- Metal boats, 665
- 'Metal Dyke', 232, 308, 330
- Metal hooks, for anchors, 657
- Metal tubing, 435
- Metallurgical blowing-engines, 281
- Metallurgy, 193, 245, 248, 546
- Method of Frame Construction, of buildings (*Ku chia chieh kou fa*), 93
- Methods of River Control. *See* *Chih Ho Fang Lüeh*
- Metrological standardisation, 5
- Metrological systems, 257 (a)
- Mexico, and Mexicans, 365, 540, 545 (f)
- Mi-tshang Shan, 19, 24
- Mi-tshang Tao. *See* Rice Granary Road
- Miao. *See* Tribal peoples
- Miao Chhang-Yen (Han or San Kuo local topographer), 87
- Miao Chih Thu Khao* (Illustrated Study of Temple Planning), 81 (b)
- Michelotti, 332 (e)
- Micronesia, 552
sails, 590, 606, 617
- Middle East, 359, 362
- Middlework Unit, 82
- Mien (river), 21, 24, 275
- Mien-hsien, 19–20, 24
- Mienyang, 137
- Migrations, 18, 70, 133 (j), 241, 476
- Mikimoto Kokichi (*d.* 1954), 676
- Milan
canals, 358, 377
ship sculpture in the basilica of St Eustorgio, 637
- Milescu Spătarul, Nikolaie (envoy of Peter the Great), 149
- Milestones, 32–3
- Military aid in repair work, 223, 232, 321, 330
- Military operations, 161, 190, 202–3, 386–7, 390, 441, 460, 623
- Military service, 257, 259–60, 261
- Military technology, 187, 203
- Millers, 347 (a)
- Millet, 225
- Mills, J. V. (9), 481
- 'Milpa' agriculture, 245
- Min (river), 192, 196, 249, 288–9, 294
rafts, 390
- Min-Chhiu, 88
- Min Shêng Shui-Shih, Ko Piao Chen Hsieh Ying, Chan Shao Chhuan Thu Shuo* (Illustrated Explanation of the (Construction of the Vessels of the) Coastal Defence Fleet (Units) of the Province of Fukien stationed at each of the Headquarters of the several Grades), 382, 406 ff., 484, 658
- Minamoto clan, 648
- Mincio (river), 357
- Mine-laying, 432
- Ming (dynasty), 42, 200–1, 279, 360, 478, 536
bridges, 155, 162, 165, 178, 203, 205
building, 85, 87, 99, 131, 133, 142
gardens, 75
Great Wall, 46–7, 49–50
hydraulic engineering, 282 ff., 297–8, 312, 317, 322, 344
maritime expeditions, 479
navigation, 379, 382, 569
ships, 400, 409–10, 415, 423, 425, 452 (b), 482, 619, 621
- Ming Hsüan Tsung. *See* Hsüan Tsung
- Ming Kung Shih* (An Account of the Palaces and Public Buildings of the Ming Dynasty), 87
- Ming navy, 477, 484, 490, 493, 498, 506, 522, 622
decline of, 525–6, 528, 534 (b)
- Ming Shêng (ruler of the State of Shu, r. +1366 to +1371), 687
- Ming Shih* (History of the Ming Dynasty), 315, 350 (a), 480–1, 493, 498, 687
- Ming Shih Lu* (Veritable Records of the Ming Dynasty), 493
- Ming Thang (cosmic palace-temple), 80, 121 (d), 122 (a)
- Ming Ti. *See* Han Ming Ti
- Ming Ti (San Kuo (Wei) emperor, r. +226 to +239), 104
- Ming tombs. *See* Tombs
- Miniature buildings, 105–6

- Mining, 53 (d)
 Minipe-ela, 371
 Minister of Agriculture. *See* Sui Jen
 Minister of Works. *See* Ssu-Khung
 Ministry of War. *See* Ping Pu
 Ministry of Works, 38, 480
 Minneriya-wewa, 370, 373
 Minute-glass, 559
 Mir Ali Bey (c. +1580), 514
 Mirams, D. G. (1), 46, 59, 170, 181
 Mirrors, 677
 as means of exchange, 519
 Miscellanea of the Thang Dynasty. *See* *Thang Yü Lin*
 Miscellaneous Information from Kuei-Hsin Street. *See* *Kuei-Hsin Tsa Chih*
 Miscellaneous Prognostications by Sun, Moon, Comets and Rainbows, according to the Usage of the Sea People. *See* *Hai Chung Yih Yüeh Hui Hung Tsa Chan*
 Miscellaneous Temple Traditions according with the Vinaya Regulations. *See* *Lü Hsiang Kan Thung Chuan*
 Miscellany of the Yu-Yang Mountain Cave. *See* *Yu-Yang Tsa Tsu*
 Mississippi stern-wheeler steamboats, 437 (c)
 Mitre gate, 345, 358
 Mitsunobu Ukone-no-Shogen (painter, +1434 to +1525), 647
 Mizen-sail. *See* Sails
 Mnemonic verses, 583
Mo (balks or headlands), 258 (c)
Mo (river), 290
Mo Chi (Director of the Imperial University), 476–7
Mo Chi (Things Silently Recorded), 82 (a)
Mo Jen-Shou (Shu official, +1370), 688
Mo-Lin, 495
Mo Ti (–4th-century philosopher, *Mo Tzu*), 125
Mo Tzu (The Book of Master *Mo*), 125, 681
 Mock, E. B. (1), 163, 181
 Models, 88
 architectural, 105–6, 127, 134–5
 landscape, 105
 pottery, 126 (a), 127–8, 448, 546 (l), 650
 ships, 409, 424, 434, 447–8, 650, 652
 Modules and modulators, 67–8, 89 (e), 139, 255 (d), 604 (a)
 Moeris (Lake), 365 (f)
 Mogadishu, 490, 494, 498
 Mogul Empire, 488 (c)
 Mogul painting, 118
 Mohenjodaro ships, 433 (e)
 Mohism, 32 (c), 682
 Mōko Shūrai Ekotoba (Illustrations and Narrative of the Mongol Invasion of Japan, +1281), 647
 Moll, F. (1), 382; (3), 664
 Moll, F. & Laughton, L. G. Carr, 406
 Mollusc shells, 675
 Moluccas, 507, 536
 Mombasa, 490, 498, 524
 sacking of, 514
Momordica seeds, 530
 Monardes, Nicholas, 531, 533
 Mongolia, 48, 52, 567, 587
 Mongols, 87, 122 (a), 175, 199–200, 297, 311, 361, 386–7, 438, 465, 477–8, 497, 526, 647
 Monsoon winds, 217, 219, 239, 368–9, 375, 462, 511, 571 (h), 599, 645
 di Montalboddo, Francanzano (cartographer, +1508), 501 (c), 508
 Moon
 influence on marine animals, 675
 times of rising and setting, 583
 Moore, Sir Alan, 383
 Moors, 517
 Morality. *See* Ethics
 Morbihan luggers, 614
 Morocco, 504
 Mortar, 45, 169
 Motion, alternating and continuous, 623 (b)
 Motoki Masahide (1808), 381 (d), 402 (f)
Mou (measure of land area), 260 (c)
 Moulded bricks. *See* Bricks
 Mozambique, 497–8, 503, 507
 Mozambique Channel, 494–5, 498, 509
 Mu-Chhia Chhiao, 181
Mu Ching (Timberwork Manual), 81 ff., 141
Mu Kung (Nakhi chieftain), 198, 200 (c)
Mu-lan dam, 284 (c)
Mu-Lan-Phi, 475
 ‘*Mu-Lan*’ ships, 475
Mu lao ya (offensive weapon), 692
Mu lung (‘wooden dragon’), 328, 341 (d)
Mu Lung Chhêng Kuei (Specifications for the ‘Wooden Dragon’ Sheet-piling Pile-Driver), 328
Mu ma (‘wooden horses’, skis), 14 (a)
Mu-Ma Ho, 276
Mu-ma Thu-chüeh (‘Wooden-Horse Turks’), 14 (a)
Mu phai (timber rafts). *See* Rafts
Mu ying (float raft). *See* Rafts
Mu-yü (Buddhist liturgical drum), 543
 Muḥammad (Ma-Ha-Mo-Tè), 478
Muḥit (The Ocean), 571
 Mujung Chhui (first king of the Later Yen dynasty, r. +383 to +396), 314, 386
 Mujung Lan, 282 (d)
 Mukalla, fishing-fleet of, 609
 Mules, 30
Muleta, 619 (d)
 Muller-Lyer lines, 117 (d)
 Multiple-masted ships, regulations against, 527
 al-Muqaddasi, Abū Bakr al-Bannā al-Bashāri (geographer, +985), 652, 661
 al-Murābiṭūn, 475
 Muratori, 332 (e)
 Murphy, H. K., 67, 76–7
Murūj al-Dhahab (Meadows of Gold), 465 (i)
 Muscat, 524
 Musical instruments, 546 (f)
 Musk, 496
 Muslim sailors, 475–6

Muslim traders, 507 (a)
 Muslims, 503-4, 514, 522
 Mussels, 675-6
 al-Mutawakkil (Caliph, *r.* +847 to +861), 334 (h)
 'Mutual inlaying', 174
 The Myriad Stratagems. *See Wan Chi Lun*
 Mystical religion, and aspiring monumentality in stone buildings, 90 (a)

Na tzu (offensive weapon), 692
 Nacre, 674-5
 Nagahama Manjūrō (*c.* 1850), 548 (a)
 Nagas. *See Tribal peoples*
Naggar, 608, 611
 Nahr al-Rāsāsi Canal, 366 (c)
 Nahrawān Canal, 366
 Nails, 389, 450, 459, 469
 Nakhi kingdom, 185
 Nakhi tribes. *See Tribal peoples*
 Nalan Chhēng-T'è (Manchu prince, +1676), 80-1
 Nan-an, 154
 Nan Chao kingdom, 198, 200 (a), 210, 297
 Nan-Chhan Ssu temple. *See Temples*
 Nan-chhang, 629
Nan Chhi Shu (History of the Southern Chhi Dynasty), 676
 Nan Chhü, 300, 302
Nan Chou I Wu Chih (Strange Things of the South), 381, 600, 671
 Nan-chün, 8
 Nan-hai, 15, 27-8, 36, 536, 587
Nan Hai Pai Yung (A Hundred Chants of the Southern Seas), 662
 Nan Han (dynasty), 672
 Nan-ho-chhuan, 399, 434
 Nan-hsün railway, 16
Nan Hu Chi (Southern Lake Collection of Poems), 380 (b)
 Nan Huai-Jen. *See Verbiest, Ferdinand*
 Nan-Khang, 451
 Nan-khou pass and Gate, 48, 56
 Nan Ling mountains, 15
 Nan mēn (constellation), 565
 Nan Pei Chhao (*c.* +380 to +580), 31, 282-3
 Nan Shan, 17, 49, 298
 Nan-Shan Pei Lu. *See Road North of the Southern Mountains*
Nan Shih (History of the Southern Dynasties), 105
Nan Tu Fu (Ode on the Southern City), 86
 Nan-wang Chen, 316, 318
 Nan-Wang Hu (lake), 327
 Nan-yang, 8, 16, 21, 31, 54, 86, 267, 281, 345
 Nan Yüeh, 8, 24, 441 (h), 447 (a)
Nan Yüeh Chih (Records of the South), 605
 Nanchhēng, bridge at, 173
 Nandivardhana (Indian King, -5th or -4th century), 367
 Nanking, 8, 74, 222, 478-9, 533
 embassies to, 490
 excavations, 483

 ship-yards, 382, 481, 483
 ships, 618
 Thai Tsu's tomb at, 77
 Nanking Museum, 60 (b)
 Naphtha, 361, 469
 Naqadian ships, 433-4, 447
 Nara, 75 (j)
 Tōdaiji temple at, 101 (j), 107
 Nasik, 171 (g)
 Natal, 498, 507
 Natural curiosities, collection of, 489, 529 ff.
 Naturalists, in Chēng Ho's fleets, 491 (h)
 Nature
 Chinese attitude towards, 115
 and Chinese architecture, 60 ff.
 interference with, 53, 249
Nau redonda, 509, 513, 607 (l), 609 (i)
 Nautical almanacs, 559
 Nautical mile and league, 560 (a)
 Nautical Nomenclature. *See Shih Chou*
 Nautical tables, 584
 Nautical technology
 Chinese and Portuguese compared, 508 ff.
 technical terms, 381, 402 ff.
 Naval battles, 440 ff., 445, 477
 Naval manoeuvres, 460
 Naval medicine, 491 (h)
 Naval titles, 441-2
 de Navarrete, Domingo (Dominican friar, +1659), 47 (e), 148 (e), 158 (a), 311 (b), 347 (d), 423, 518, 537 (b), 673 (f)
 Navigable rivers, 1, 3, 26, 29
 Navigation, 379, 554 ff.
 astronomical, 491 (g), 514, 554 ff., 557 (a), 560 ff., 572-3
 of rivers, 215, 303, 357
 long-distance, 443 (f), 482, 487, 489, 554 ff., 652-3; primitive, 554-5, 562; quantitative, 554 ff., 560, 562, 567, 576, 652; mathematical, 554, 559-60, 652; Asian and Western methods contrasted, 572-3
 mutual influence of Arabic and Chinese navigators, 573
 Navigation Manual of the Genwa reign-period. *See Genwa Kōkaisho*
 Navigational diagrams, 565-6
 Navigational instruments, 573 ff.
 Naviglio Grande, 377
 Nazaré, boats of, 438 (g)
 Necho II (Pharaoh, *r.* -609 to -594), 357, 501 (d)
 Neck-rest pillows, 546 (l)
 Nei Chiang, 288, 292, 294, 295 (h), 376
 Nei Ching Thu, 549 (b)
 Neihuang, 234
 Nemi, Lake, temple-ships of, 657, 664-5
 Neo-Confucianism, 526
 Nepal, 189-90, 491
 Nero (Roman emperor, *r.* +54 to +67), 364 (i)
 Nesteruk, F. Y. (1, 2), 217
 'Nests' (*tsēng chhao*), 120, 122
 Net-weights, 546 (l)

INDEX

877

- Netherlands, 102, 264 (b), 339, 357, 364, 524, 611, 660
See also Dutch
- Neuburger, A. (1), 660
- New Collection of Timberwork Treatises. *See* *Hsin Chi Mu Shu*
- New Discourse on the Talk of the Times. *See* *Shih Shuo Hsin Yü*
- New Edifications on (i.e. Additions to) the *Literary Expositor*. *See* *Phi Ya*
- New Guinea, 539, 586–7, 660
- New History of the Five Dynasties Period. *See* *Hsin Wu Tai Shih*
- New History of the Tang Dynasty. *See* *Hsin Thang Shu*
- New Holland, 536, 587
- New Investigation of Sea Transport. *See* *Hai Yün Hsin Khao*
- New Pien canal. *See* Pien Chhü (the New Pien)
- New Records of Things Heard and Seen. *See* *Wên Chien Chin Lu*
- New Records of the Two Capitals. *See* *Liang Ching Hsin Chi*
- New South Wales, 536
- New Theory of Vision*, 117 (d)
- New Zealand, 587
- Newfoundland, 474
- Niah caves, 537
- Niang-Niang Ho, 278
- Nicholas of Cusa, 559 (k)
- Nicobar Islands, 490, 507
- Nieh River canal, 224 (b)
- Nieh Chhung-I (archaeological ritualist, *fl.* +956), 80–1
- Nien Hsi-Yao (writer on perspective, *fl.* +1729), 112
- Nieuhoff, J. (+1656) (1), 360 (e), 436 (c)
- Nieuwe Rhijn canal, 364
- Nieuwpoort, ‘magnum slusam’ at, 357
- Night and day, lengths of, 583
- Nile, 288, 365 ff.
 canal connecting with the Red Sea, 356–7, 359, 373 (i), 465 (i), 609 (f)
 Joseph’s arm of, 356 (h), 365 (f)
 navigation on, 607
 sails, 606, 608, 611, 613
- Nilometers, 294, 333
- Nine Chapters on the Mathematical Art. *See* *Chiu Chang Suan Shu*
- Nine continents, 585
- Nineveh
 Sennacherib’s palace at, 446, 635
 water-supply of, 356
- Ning-chhiang, 24
- Ning Hsien Wang. *See* Chu Chhüan
- Ning-yang, 315
- Ningshia, 49, 52
 bridge, 189
 irrigation system, 272, 280, 376
- Ningpo, 142, 320, 324, 577, 584
 pagoda at, 141 (f)
 water-gates at, 683 (a)
- ‘Ningpo’ (Chinese junk), 485
- Nishikawa Joken (+1708), 381 (d), 402 (f)
- Nishimura, S., 386–7, 390
- Nittō Guhō Junrei Gyōki* (Record of a Pilgrimage to China in search of the Buddhist Law), 643
- Niu-lan Chiang, 185
- Niu Shan, 244
- des Noëttes, Lefebvre, 2, 626, 653; (2), 628, 636
- Nomadic peoples, 14, 30 (d), 43, 52 ff., 55, 122 (a), 214, 227, 284
 and the Roman Empire, 55
- Noria, 660 (h)
- Norman, Robert (+1590), 560 (c)
- Norman arch. *See* Arches, semicircular
- Norman ships, 472, 606–7, 636, 648 (h), 657 (e)
- Norse carving, of Viking ship, 608
- North America. *See* America, North
- North China Plain, 28, 220, 232, 307
- North pole (celestial), 578
- North Sea, 357
- North-South Road (Tzu-wu Tao), 22, 28, 347
- Northern Chhi (dynasty), 48, 89
- Northern Sung (dynasty), 360
- Northern Trestle Road, 20–1
- Northern Wei (dynasty), 31, 48, 101, 129, 138, 278
- Norwegian boats, 607
- Notched flutes, 546 (f)
- Notebook on the Halls and Palaces of Loyang. *See* *Lo-yang Kung Tien Pu*
- Notes on an Embassy to the West. *See* *Hsi Shih Chi*
- Notes from the Hall of Learned Old Age. *See* *Lao Hsüeh An Pi Chi*
- Notes on Life’s Staples. *See* *Chhang Wu Chih*
- Notes on Rivers and Canals. *See* *Ho Chhü Chi Wên*
- Notices of Strange Things. *See* *Piao I Lu*
- van Nouhuys, J. W., 637
- da Novate, Bertola (c. +1410 to +1475), 358, 362, 377
- Novus Atlas Sinensis* (+1655), 189, 205
- Novus Orbis* (+1622), 590 (d)
- Nü-Jen Kuo. *See* Kingdom of Women
- Nü-Kua (female pseudo-creator spirit), 252–3
- Numerals, Hindu–Arabic, 556
- Nun, Cape (opposite the Canary Islands, near the boundary of Morocco), 465 (i), 499
- Nunes, Pedro (Portuguese mathematician, +1537), 560
- Nung Chêng Chhüan Shu* (Complete Treatise on Agriculture), 341
- Nung people. *See* Tribal peoples
- Nung Shu* (Treatise on Agriculture), 225, 247, 340–1, 347 (f)
- Nuyts (*fl.* +1618 to +1627), 536
- Nydam ship, 636 (e)
- Nyū-Min Kī* (Diary of Travels in the Ming Empire), 360 (e)
- O-Chhi (river), 451
- O Chhien-Chhiu (Han scholar), 226

- O-mei Shan, 151
- Oar-ports, 447, 621, 631–2, 686
- Oars, 395 ff., 403, 450, 467, 469, 608 (e), 620 ff., 626, 631
 angle-, 620
 in canal ship, 411
 sculling-, 622, 642, 696
 steering-, 393, 434, 446, 618, 620, 626 ff., 631, 635 ff., 646, 650, 655, 697; limitations of, 632
 T-handled, 621
 technical terms, 620–1
 with thole-pins and blocks, 622
 timber for, 414
- Oblique weir. *See* Weirs
- Observations on Drawing and Painting. *See* *Thu Hua Chien Wên Chih*
- Obsidian, 544 (e)
- The Ocean. *See* *Muñit*
- Ocean passages, constraints on, 628
- Oceania
 sails, 616
 ships, 388–9
- Oceanic navigation. *See* Navigation, long-distance
- Oceanic sprit-sails. *See* Sails
- Octant, 559
- Oculus, 407, 413 (d), 436, 446
- Oda Nobunaga (c. +1580), 684 (e)
- Ode on the Art of Letters. *See* *Wên Fu*
- Ode on the Celestial Sphere. *See* *Hun Thien Fu*
- Ode on the Ching-Fu Palace. *See* *Ching-Fu Tien Fu*
- Ode on the City of Yang-chou. *See* *Yang Tu Fu*
- Ode to Cure Quickly the Evils of the Age. *See* *Tzhu Shih Chi Hsieh Fu*
- Ode on the Eastern Capital. *See* *Tung Ching Fu*, and *Tung Tu Fu*
- Ode on the Ling-Kuang Palace in the Land of Lu. *See* *Lu Ling-Kuang Tien Fu*
- Ode on the Red Cliff, 649 (a)
- Ode on the Southern City. *See* *Nan Tu Fu*
- Ode on the Western Capital. *See* *Hsi Ching Fu*, and *Hsi Tu Fu*
- Odoric of Pordenone (c. +1330), 380 (a), 451, 471 (a), 536 (b), 572
- ‘Official Boat’, 406
- Official Manual of Engineering... *See* *Chhin-Ting Kung Pu Kung Chhêng Tso Fa*
- Ogawa, Kazumasa (1), 58
- Ogival arch. *See* Arches
- Oikoumene*, 585
- Oja, 514
- Old China Hand literature, 151
- Old History of the Tang Dynasty. *See* *Chiu Thang Shu*
- Old Silk Road, 17–18, 24, 28, 31, 33, 46, 49, 140, 152, 189, 298
- On the Making of Gardens. *See* *Yuan Yeh*
- On the Mutual Responses of Things according to their Categories. *See* *Wu Lei Hsiang Kan Chih*
- Ong Ta-Li (+16th-century engineer), 344
- Open-field system, 520 (e)
- Opium traffic, 519
- Opium Wars, 513, 528
- Oporto, 503
- Optical illusions, 116 (e), 117 (d)
- Optics, 111, 113, 115 (b), 117–18
- Oqruqçi (Mongol military engineer, fl. +1283), 314 ff., 319
- Oracle-bones, 439, 599
- Ordos Desert, 14, 49, 54, 220, 272, 280
- Organic view of the universe, 68 (i), 70–1
- The Original Recension of the Yellow Emperor’s Manual of Corporeal Medicine. *See* *Huang Ti Nei Ching, Thai Su*
- Ormuz, 490, 505, 582
 Sultan of, 514
- Orrery, 586
- da Orta, Garcia (+1563), 531
- Oruwa*, 612
- Oseberg ship, 388, 636 (c)
- Ostia, 179
 mosaics at, 474 (c)
- Ostrich, 530 (e)
 eggs, 502 (a)
- Ou thien*. *See* Pit-cultivation
- Outriggers, 384–5, 458–9, 619 (b), 698
 double, 612
- Ouyang Hsüan (scholar and hydraulic engineer, c. +1350), 325, 344
- Over-grazing, 244
- Overflow-tank clepsydra, 362 (b)
- Ox-hides, 687
- Ox-teams, 309 (b)
- Ox-whim capstans, 352
- ‘Oyster-shells’ (*li fang*), 153 (f)
- Oysters, 675–6, 678
- Pa* (dam, dyke or embankment), 362
- Pa* (river), 150, 199, 335
- Pa* (State), 15, 19, 21, 24 ff., 28, 389 (e), 690
- Pa Chhuan Hsia Hsia Thu*, 631
- Pa-hsi-mi*. *See* Tribal peoples
- Pa li* (‘bed-harrowing ploughs’), 336
- Pa Tzu Chhiao*, 153
- Pacheco, Duarte (+1505), 513 (d)
- Pacific Ocean, 485, 541
 climate, 548
 exploration of, 441, 551, 638 (e)
 fable of abyss in, 549–50
 navigability of, 435 (j), 547–8
 sails, 590, 611–12, 615, 617
- Packhorse bridges, 167 (a)
- Pack-horses. *See* Horses
- Padawiya-wewa, 372
- Paddle-wheel boats, 311 (b), 336, 476, 626, 696
- Paddle-wheel ships, 416 (b), 476, 625 (e), 630 (b), 681 (b), 688–9, 692, 696
 and ship armour, 689
- Paddle-wheels, 332 (e), 559 (l), 625, 689
- Paddles, 393, 419, 450, 620
 quarter-, 627, 632, 635
 rudder-shaped, 636
 steering-, 455, 635, 655–6

INDEX

879

- Paderno, 377
Padua, 351
Pagodas, 58, 61, 65, 69, 115, 128–9, 137 ff., 204
 building techniques, 140–2
 of iron or bronze, 141
 oldest extant, 138
 shape, 138–9
Pai Canal, 228, 281, 286
Pai Chü-I (Thang poet), 230, 320
Pai Ho (White River), 313, 318–19
Pai jen, 538 (c)
Pai Kuei, 265
Pai Kung (official, *fl.* –95), 286
Pai-pu, 354
Pai Shé Chuan (The Story of the White Snake Pagoda), 241
Pai-shen, 352
Pai-Shih Yai irrigation scheme, 297–8
Pai-thing Ho Valley, 49
Pai Ying (irrigation-worker, *fl.* +1411), 315
Paint compositions, 85
Painting and drawing, 111 ff., 118–19
 landscape, 112, 115
 ‘sharp-edge’, 106, 113
 technical terms, 112
The Painting Basket. *See* *Hua Chhuan*
Pāla dynasty, 367
Palaces, 58, 60, 63, 70, 73, 86, 89, 105, 111, 124
 Han, 75, 86
 Ta Ming Kung, 107, 206
 Thang, 73, 107, 131, 206
 Wei Yang Kung, 45 (c)
 Yuan Ming Yuan, 81, 86
Palladian villas, 102
Palladio, Andrea (*c.* +1570), 145 (d)
Pallava dynasty, 367
Palmipeds, as models for shapes of hulls, 419
Palmyra temples. *See* Temples
Pamirs, 188
Pan (old steersman’s word), 439
Pan Ku (Han historian, +87), 86, 129, 162, 271, 443
Pan-pho-tshun (neolithic village), excavations at, 121
Pan-pipes, 546 (f)
Panama Canal, 365
Pandects, 438
Pandik-kulam, 370
Pao (river), 20–1, 275
Pao-chhêng, 19–20
Pao-chhing Chhiu-tzu, 598
Pao chhuan. *See* Treasure-ships
Pao Chhuan Chhang. *See* Shipyards
Pao-chi, 17
Pao-Phing Khou. *See* Cornucopia Channel
Pao Phu Tzu (Book of the Preservation-of-Solidarity Master), 386, 673
Pao-Tai Chhiao, 174
Pao-thou, 14
Pao Tsun-Phêng (1, 1), 481
Pao-yeh Road, 20 ff., 30, 275
Paoshan, 35, 200
Paoting, 282
Paper-making, 362, 546
Paper currency, 526
Papua, 599
Parākrama Bāhu I (King of Ceylon, *r.* +1153 to +1186), 137 (d), 371–2
Parākrama Samudra (Sea of Parākrama), 371
Paramesvara (Prince of Malacca, +1403), 489 (c)
Parapet-gutters, 102 (f)
Paris, F. E. (Admiral, 1840), 382, 418 ff., 424, 437, 598, 616, 656
Paris, P., 619–20; (1), 445, 451, 458; (2), 450, 648; (3), 438; (5), 612
Parish, Captain (*fl.* +1793), 50–1
Parma canals, 358
Parmentier, H. (1), 450
Parodos, 632
Parrels, 595, 597, 647–8
Parry, J. H. (1), 505
Parsons, W. B. (1), 163; (2), 145, 356, 358, 376
Parthia, and the Parthians, 3, 28, 47 (d), 198 (d)
Passports, 38
The Past seems a Dream. *See* *Mêng Liang Lu*
Paté, 497
Patela (boats on the Ganges), 655
Paths
 paved, 32
 trackers’, 26
Patolli (game), 544 (f)
Patrol boats, 425, 484, 626, 642, 686, 689, 691, 696
Pattipola, 372
Paul of Limbourg (artist, *fl.* +1416), 115 (b)
Pavia, covered bridge at, 175, 181
 canal, 377
Pax Mongolica, 361
Pearl fisheries, 668 ff.
‘Pearl matrices’ (*chu mu*), 675
Pearls, 443, 453, 496
 artificial, 674, 677–8
 cultivated, 674–7
Peasant revolt (+1130), 692
Peasants, 224 ff., 257 ff.
Pechili trader. *See* Chiangsu trader
Peck. *See* *tou*
San Pedro, California, 485
Pei-chan Lu (Northern Trestle Road). *See* Pao-yeh Road
Pei Chhü, 300, 303, 305
Pei Chi chhu Ti Thu (Plan of North Polar Altitudes), 577 ff.
Pei-chi-li freighter, 510
Pei-chih-li, Gulf of, 551
Pei Hsing Yih Lu (Diary of a Journey to the North), 178 (e), 333, 349 (e)
Pei Lin Museum (Sian), 107
Pei-tu-tshun, pagoda at, 142
Peking, 26, 31, 73 (b), 74 ff., 87, 307, 313, 360, 478–9, 490
 canals, 227, 282, 310, 317–18
 imperial palaces, 134
 imperial temples, 58, 77
 traditional Chinese home in, 65

- Pelliot, P., 443; (27, 28), 111
Pên Tshao Kang Mu (Great Pharmacopoeia), 533
Pên Tshao Phün Hui Ching Yao (Essentials of the Pharmacopoeia Ranked according to Nature and Efficacy), 533
 Penteconters. *See* Longships
 Pepper, 496, 520, 603
 Perception, 117
 racial differences and, 118
Peregrinaçam, 535
 Pereira, Galcote (Portuguese traveller, *fl.* +1577), 148, 158, 162, 184
 Periander (ruler of Corinth, –625 to –585), 364–5
 Peripatetic school, 673 (b)
Periploi, 555
Periplus of the Erythraean Sea, 460, 518 (d)
 Perpendicular style, of architecture, 103
 Perpignan, 179
 Perronet, J. R. (bridge engineer, +1708 to +1794), 358 (h)
 Persia and the Persians, 3, 334–5, 361, 454, 612
 flag, 472
 hydraulic engineering, 367
 merchants, 453
 ships, 451
 Persian drawings, of ships, 642
 Persian Gulf, 486, 490, 504, 564
 lighthouses in, 661
 sewn ships of, 465
 Persian Royal Road, 2, 34–5
 Persimmon trees, 694
 Perspective, 102, 107, 111–19, 649
 convergent or optical, 110 ff., 118–19
 divergent, 116, 119
 parallel, 113 ff., 118
 ‘perspective cavalière’ or ‘zenith perspective’, 112 (e)
 Peru
 rafts, 139 (c), 511 (a), 547, 617–18
 roads, 5 (b)
 suspension bridge, 184, 190
 Peruvian balsam, 531
 Pescadores Islands, 380 (b)
 Peter the Great (of Russia, *r.* +1696 to +1725), 149, 542 (f)
 Petersen, E. A. (1), 485 (f)
 Petty, Sir William (naval inventor, +1662), 392 (c)
 Peutinger Tables, 27
Phai-lou (triumphal arches), 33, 62 (d), 63–4, 69, 142 ff.
 Phan Chêng-Shu (Assistant Administrator of Chi-ning, +1411), 315
 Phan Chi-Hsün (Ming hydraulic engineer), 229, 237, 325–6, 344
 Phan Chiang (R.), 25, 203–4
 Phan Hsi (governor of Hotung, *fl.* –129), 273, 275
 Phan Hsi-En (writer, 1832), 326
 Phan-hsien, 193
 Phan-Kuang Chhiao, 154, 156
 Phan Shih-Chhêng (ship-builder, 1840), 527
 Phan-Tiet, boats of, 611 (g)
 Phang Yuan-Ying (writer, +1086), 675–6
 Pharmaceutical Prescriptions of the Muslims. *See* *Hui-Hui Yao Fang*
 Pharmaceutics, 531
 Pharos of Alexandria. *See* Alexandria
 Phei, 8, 16
 Phei Chhü (architect, +1078 to +1086), 142
 Phei-hsien, 316
 Phei Hsiu (+3rd-century cartographer), 568
 Phei Yao-Chhing (Imperial Transport Commissioner, +733), 278, 310
Phêng (awnings or sails), 605
 Phêng Chêng (+15th-century naval physician), 491 (h)
 Phêng Jung (bridge-builder), 173
 Phêng-Lai (fabled island), 551 ff.
 Phêng Li Shih (poem), 640
 Phêng Lin (sailor, 1942), 548 (d)
Phêng so (sheets). *See* Sheets
 Phêng Wu (general, *fl.* –129), 16, 25
 Phêngshan, Han tomb-model from, 373 (b)
 Phenomenal Regression Index, 117, 118–19
Phi chhuan. *See* ‘Skin-boats’
Phi fa tzu (skin raft). *See* Rafts
 Phi Hou-Yuan (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* +1305), 349 (b)
Phi-lan boats, 450
 Phi-Tsung, 444
Phi Ya (New Edifications on (i.e. Additions to) the Literary Expositor), 677
 Philippa of Lancaster (+1386, daughter of John of Gaunt), 503
 Philippines, 128, 507, 520, 536, 549, 582
 Phillips, G. (1), 566
 Phing-chhêng, 26
Phing-Chou Kho Than (Phingchow Table-Talk), 381, 461
Phing Hsia Lu (Record of the Pacification of Hsia), 688 (a)
 Phing-hsing-kuan, 48
 Phing Shih (Superintendent of Waterways Police), 255 (a), 267
 Phing Ti (Han emperor, *r.* +1 to +6), 444
 Phing-yao, temple at, 131
 Phingkuang, 234
 Phingyuan, 238, 330
Pho-kan (‘striking-arms’), 690–1, 692
 Pho-tao, 25
 Phoenicians, 356, 376 (d), 486, 501 (d), 698
 navigation, 554 (f)
 ships, 389, 446, 635
 Phou Chhien-Erh (+12th-century bridge engineer), 183
 Phu-Chi Chhiao, 181
 Phu-Chin Chhiao, 160–1
 Phu-Mêng Phu-Wang (Nakhi prince, *fl.* +794), 200
 Phu Shou-Kêng (Commissioner of Merchant Shipping, +1250 to +1275), 453 (c), 465
 Phu Yung (Yuan hydraulic engineer), 285 (a)
Phyohae Rok (Maritime Odyssey), 210 (b), 360 (e)
 Physicians, 491, 530

INDEX

881

- Pi (river), 275
 Pi Chan (official, c. –300), 256
 Pi Fang-Chi. *See* Sambiasi, Francisco
 Pi-La (unidentified place on the African coast), 499
 Pi Lan (engineer and master-founder, fl. +186), 276
Pi Shu Kung Thu (Drawing of the Summer Palace), 106
Piao I Lu (Notices of Strange Things), 125 (f), 178
 Picie, 205
 Pictograms for boat or ship, 396, 439–40
 Pictures of the Garden of an Unsuccessful Official. *See* *Cho Chêng Yuan Thu*
 Pictures of Tilling and Weaving. *See* *Kêng Chih Thu*
 Picul. *See* *tan*
 Pien (river), 230–1, 269
 Pien the Wheelwright, 85 (a)
 Pien Chhü (the old canal, before +600), 270, 281, 307–8, 312, 345–6, 359, 363, 375
 Pien Chhü (the New Pien, completed +605), 164, 308 ff., 332–3, 344, 353, 362, 377
 Piers, 146, 151–2, 158, 170, 174, 177
 Piétri, J. B. (1), 438
 Pile-dwellings, 123, 129
 Piles, and pile-driving, 51, 129, 146, 151–2, 328, 339, 344
 Pilot-cords, 187, 205 (b)
 Pilots, 554 ff., 562, 565–6, 568, 573 ff., 583
 Pin-chhuan, bridge at, 193
 Pineapple, 475
Ping Chhien (Key of Martial Art), 583
 Ping Pu (Ministry of War), 31
 Pintles, 628, 632–3, 644–5
 Pinto, Fernão Mendes (writer, +1614), 535
 Piper (marine inventor, 1822), 658
 Piraeus, 19
 Pirates, 478, 491
 Japanese, 528
 sea-fight with, 622
 Pires, Tomé (Portuguese ambassador, +1515), 534 (b), 535
 Pisé. *See* *Terre pisé*
 Pit-cultivation, 246–7
 Pit-dwellings, 120 ff.
 Pitch-pipes, 253 (a)
 Pivots, 639–40
 Place-names, on Chinese maps, 501, 565, 568 (i), 587
 Plaited palm branches, used in lug-sails, 598
 Plan of North Polar Altitudes. *See* *Pei Chi chhu Ti Thu*
Planisphaerium (Ptolemy), 579
 Planning of River Control. *See* *Chih Ho Tshê*
 Plantation labour, 517, 529
 Plants, illustrations of, 110 (d)
 Plaster and plasterers, 40–1, 90
 Platform foundations, 63 ff., 90–1, 127, 129
 Platinum, 544 (e)
 Playfair, G. M. H. (1), 412
 Pliny, 39, 519 (a), 612
 Ploughing ceremony, 546 (j)
 Ploughs, 260
 Plumb-line, 331
 Plymouth Sound, 608
 Pneumonic plague, 530
Po (sea-going ships or junks), 449–50, 459
 Po-Lu-Lo (Bolor, modern Gilgit), 197
Po-mo (nautical technical term), 408
Po Wu Chih (Records of the Investigation of Things), 678 (b)
 Poe, Edgar Allen, 550
 Poem of the Wandering Hsien. *See* *Yu Hsien Shih*
 ‘Point-closure’, 640, 695
 Poisonous smoke. *See* ‘Toxic smoke’
 Polar altitudes, 499 (b), 557, 567
 tables, 559
 Pole-star, 563 (b), 565 ff., 571–2
 Police boats, 479, 484
 Poling gangway, 385, 448, 698
 Polo, Marco (+13th century), 69 (b), 87 (d), 127 (k), 148, 155, 171, 183–4, 240, 312, 320 (h), 334, 361, 414 (b), 421, 423, 438 (f), 451, 452 (b), 465 ff., 471, 474, 481, 499, 536 (b), 558 (b), 570 (d), 571, 602, 613–14, 624 (c), 644, 663
 Polonnaruwa, 370–1
 pagoda at, 138
 Polono, Fr. (+1445), 522
 Polus Arcticus, 572
 Polynesia, 547
 sails, 590, 606–7
 ships, 385, 681
 Pons Fabricius, 168, 172, 179 (a), 181
 Pons Milvius, 168
 Pont de Castellane, Sisteron, 181
 Pont de Céret, 179
 Pont de la Guillotière, Lyon, 181
 Pont St Esprit, near Bollène, 175, 181, 184
 Pont St Martin, near Aosta, 168
 Ponte d’Augusto, Narni, 168 (d)
 Ponte Coperto, Pavia, 181
 Ponte Vecchio, Florence, 175, 181, 184, 358 (e)
 ‘Pontic Migration’, 389 (e)
Pontones, 437
 Pontoon bridges. *See* *Bridges*
 Ponzo figure, 117 (d)
 Population, 222
 of neolithic village, 121
 resettlement of, 235–6, 238, 241, 266, 526
 and road-building, 29
 of towns, 71, 74
 Porcelain, 496, 526, 530, 603
 shards, 497, 537
 Port Darwin, Taoist statuette found near, 537–8
 Port Moresby, 599
 Portal bracing, 104
 Porter (marine inventor, 1838), 658
 Portholes, 404, 472
 Portolan charts, 493, 555–6, 558, 564, 568 (f), 569
 Portolano Laurenziano-Gaddiano, 501
 Portsmouth, dry dock at, 660

Portugal, 472–3, 503
collapse of empire, 524

Portuguese, 149, 157, 208, 379, 476, 498, 502, 569
aggression, 514–15
fishing-boats, 622 (f)
missionaries, 521–2
navigators, 557 ff., 565, 567, 571 ff., 652–3
sails, 599, 617
ships, 439, 474 (d), 481, 509, 524, 619
trade, 517 ff., 529
voyages of discovery, 479, 487, 493, 501, 503

Post-horse system, 30

Post-offices (*yu*), 35

Post-station system, 30–1, 33, 34–8
terminology, 35–6

Post-Stations along the Roads and Streams. *See* *Yen Thu Shui I*

Potatoes, 520 (e)

Potosi silver, 520

Pottery, 443
Arretine, 519 (b)
tripod, 543

Pottery bowl (as boat), 386

Pottery kilns, 123 (g), 151 (h)

Pottery models. *See* Models

Pottery vessels (as floats), 387

Poujade, J., 383, 418; (1), 435, 613, 620; (2), 438, 461; (3), 434

Pound-locks, 215–16, 275–6, 304, 306, 313, 319, 327, 345–6, 349 ff., 353 ff., 412
on Egyptian canal, alleged, 356–7
in Europe, 355–6, 377
three-gate type, 353

Power-stations, 296

Poyang Lake, 222
boats of, 422

Pozzolana (volcanic clay), 169 (b)

Prague, 175 (f)

Prahu, or *prao*, 611 (i)

Prahu Buatan barat, 613

Praia de Restelo, 486

The Prancing-Dragon Admiral. *See* Wang Chün

Precious metals
as means of exchange, 518–19, 521, 526
working of, 89

Precious Secrets of the Realm of Kêng and Hsin.
See *Kêng Hsin Yü Tshê*

Prefect of Credentials and Tokens. *See* Fu Chieh Ling

Prester John, 504

Price increases, 526 (b)

Primitive communism, 257 (c)

'Principles of Star Observations', 583

Prisoners, 36, 272

Private enterprise, and African exploration, 517

Private fields, 258, 260

Problemata Physica, 673 (b)

Procopius (Byzantine historian, + 533), 609 (e)

Production, 69
military importance of, 286

Prognostication, 562 (c)

Profit motive, 529, 533

'Projectile cycle', 449 (e)

Projectile warfare, Chinese preference for, 625 (e), 680 ff., 695, 697

Projection, problem of, 112–13

Prometheus, 253

Promontorium Prassium, 494, 528

Propulsion, 696
by oars, 419, 620 ff., 696
by paddle-wheels, 689, 696
by punt-poles, 438 (f), 621
by sail, 391, 451, 588 ff., 696–7
screw-, 419, 623 (b), 624–5

'Proto-chronometer', 570

Proto-feudalism, 250–1, 256–7, 263

Proto-Oceanic bifid-mast sprit-sail. *See* Sails, Indian Ocean bifid-mast sprit-sail

Proto-science, 489, 529

'Proto-thai' component of Chinese civilisation, 436 (e), 440 (d)

Proverbs, 631

'Prow yokes', 448

Pseudo-Callisthenes, 674 (c)

Pseudo-Methodius, 56 (d), 57

Psychology, and distance perception, 117

Ptolemy (Claudius Ptolomaeus, astronomer, c. + 150), 117, 494, 557, 579

Ptolemy Philadelphus (King of Egypt, r. c. – 284 to – 246), 357, 661

Pu (double-pace), 5 (d)

Pu Shih (merchant, – 115), 441 (h)

Pu-ssu star, 565–6

'Public' fields, 258 ff.

Pulakēšin II (Chālukya, King of the Deccan, r. + 609 to + 654), 454

Pulley-blocks (*kuan-lieh*), 597, 604

Pulleys, 347–8, 351

Pulumāyi, (Āndhra King, r. c. + 100), 472 (h)

Pumps
fire-extinguishing, 667
piston-, 666–7
on ships, 666–7, 698
square-pallet chain-, 152, 174 (b), 262–3, 350 (c), 660 (h), 666–7, 698

Punhoang temple, 139 (b)

Punic War, 442

Punner, 152

Punt, 437–8

Punt-pole, 438 (f), 621, 631–2

Puon River, 205

Puppet theatre, 570 (c)

Purkijaur, mussel pearling at, 676

Purlins, 66, 92, 94–5, 97, 101

Pygmies, 538 (d), 539

Pythagoras, 67

Qanāt, 334–5

al-Qantara Weir, 366 (c)

Qarā-Khiṭāi (West Liao State), 651

Qobis (Ho-Pi-Ssu, naval commander in Chinese service), 478

Quadrant, 557–8, 567, 576

Quadrennial tables, 559

- Quadriga Elders. *See* Ssu-ehhê Shu-chang
 Quant pole, 450, 621
 Quantitative grid system, 331
 Quart. *See* *tou*
 Quarter-paddle. *See* Paddles
 Quarter-picul. *See* *chün*
 Quarter-rudders. *See* Rudders
 de Queiroz, Fernão (Jesuit, +1687), 523, 535
Quffa, 383–4
 Quilon, 489, 491, 524
 Quinine, 531 (b)
Quipu, 544 (h)

 Rabbit in the moon, 544 (d)
 Rachias (Indian ambassador to Rome, c. +45), 612
 Racial differences, and distance perception, 117–19
 Racial prejudice, 535
 Racing boats, 436, 625
 de Rada, Martín (Augustinian friar, +1575), 573 (e)
 Rafters, 99–100
 Rafts, 395–6
 bamboo, 162, 384, 390, 393 ff., 435 (b), 695
 carrying explosives, 426
 float, 387
 inflated skin, 161, 199 (c), 387
 log, 384–5, 390, 394
 reed, 384, 390
 sailing-, 390 (i), 393–4, 547–8, 552, 617, 697;
 fleets of, 390 (i), 552; origin of, 551
 technical terms, 390, 395–6
 timber (*mu phai*), 659
 Wang Chün's, 694–5
 Railings, of suspension bridge, 205
 Railway gauge, 5 (d), 364 (h)
 Railways, 33–4, 180, 276, 279, 347 (g), 364 (h), 432
 Rain, personification of, 544 (e)
 Rain-making ceremonies, 543 (c)
 Rainbow bridges (*hung chhiao*), 164–5
 Rainfall, 212, 217 ff., 246, 253
 and navigation, 573
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 380 (d), 667
 al-Rāmhurmuzī, Buzurj ibn Shahriyār (Persian sea-captain, +953), 651 (f)
 Rammer. *See* Punner
 Ramming (tactical), 442, 449, 625 (e), 678–82, 688, 693
 Ramps, 82
 Random Jottings at Yün-lu. *See* *Yün Lu Man Chhao*
 Rapeseed, 520 (e)
 Rapids, negotiation of, 431, 629–31, 697
 Raroia, 547
 Rascona, 620 (f)
 Rasmussen, S. E., 76; (1), 58, 66
Rauwolfia, 531 (c)
 Rebaek ship, 636 (d)
 Rebellions
 of Huang Chhao, 320 (h), 496
 of the Lü family, 562
 of the 'Red Eyebrows', 241
 Thaiphing, 323
 Yüeh, 442
 Reclaimed land, 284 (b)
 Record of the Bridge of Ten Thousand Years. *See* *Wan-Nien Chhiao Chih*
 Record of the Building of the Pound-Locks in the Chenchow District. *See* *Shui Cha Chi*
 Record of the Canal of Communicating Grace. *See* *Thung Hui Ho Chih*
 Record of the Celebrated Gardens of Loyang. *See* *Lo-yang Ming Yuan Chi*
 Record of the Foreign Countries in the Western Oceans. *See* *Hsi-Yang Fan Kuo Chih*
 Record of the Granaries (and the Grain Transport System) of the Yuan Dynasty. *See* *Ta Yuan Tshang Khu Chi*
 Record of Institutions (lit. Rites) of the Chou Dynasty. *See* *Chou Li*
 Record of the Iron Suspension Bridge. *See* *Thieh Chhiao Chih Shu*
 Record of a Journey to the South. *See* *Lai Nan Lu*
 Record of the Opening of the Canal. *See* *Khai Ho Chi*
 Record of the Pacification of Hsia. *See* *Phing Hsia Lu*
 Record of People and Places. *See* *Fêng Thu Chi*
 Record of a Pilgrimage to China in search of the Buddhist Law. *See* *Nittō Guhō Junrei Gyōki*
 Record of a Pilgrimage to the Thien-Thai Temples on Wu-thai Shan. *See* *San Tendai Gotaisan-Ki*
 A Record of the Rebuilding of the Tōdaiji Temple at Nara. *See* *Tōdaiji Zōritsu Kuyōki*
 Record of the Repairs to the Magic Canal. *See* *Hsiu Chhü Chi*
 Record of Rites. *See* *Li Chi*
 Record of the Ship-building Yards on the Dragon River. *See* *Lung Chiang Chhuan Chhang Chih*
 Record of Strange Countries. *See* *I Yü Chih*
 Record of the Ten Sea Islands. *See* *Hai Nei Shih Chou Chi*
 Record of my Travels. *See* *Ching Hsing Chi*
 Record of the Venerable Wang Chung-Chhin. *See* *Wang Kung Chung Chhin Lu*
 Record of the 'Well-Field' Land System of the Spring-and-Autumn Period. *See* *Chhun Chhiu Ching Thien Chi*
 Records
 of despatches (*hsi*), 35
 destruction of, 493, 525, 528, 569 (b)
 Records of the Barbarian Islands. *See* *Tao I Chih Lüeh*
 Records of Chiaochow. *See* *Chiao-Chou Chi*
 Records of the Country South of Mt. Hua, Szechuan. *See* *Hua Yang Kuo Chih*
 Records of Foreign Countries in the time of the State of Wu. *See* *Wu Shih Wai Kuo Chuan*
 Records of Foreign Peoples. *See* *Chu Fan Chih*
 Records of Holy Places. *See* *Shêng Chi Chi*
 Records of the Investigation of Things. *See* *Po Wu Chih*

- Records of Maritime Transportation of the Yuan Dynasty. See *Ta Yuan Hai Yün Chi*
- Records of Mt. Hua. See *Hua Shan Chi*
- Records of the Origins of Affairs and Things. See *Shih Wu Chi Yuan*
- Records of River and Canal Shipping. See *Tshao Chhuan Chih*
- Records of the Sea-Wall along the Chhien-Thang Estuary. See *Chhien Thang Chi*
- Records of the Seat of Government at Yuan (-phing). See *Yuan Shu Tsa Chi*
- Records of Shachow, Tunhuang. See *Sha-Chou Chi*
- Records of the South. See *Nan Yüeh Chih*
- Records of Strange Things. See *Shu I Chi*
- Records of the Tributary Countries of the Western Oceans. See *Hsi-Yang Chhao Kung Tien Lu*
- Records of the Warring States. See *Chan Kuo Tshé*
- Rectangular grid. See Grid system
- Red Army, 202
- Red Basin, 221
- 'Red Eyebrows', 241
- Red paints, used in the disposal of the dead, 545
- Red Sea, 504, 564, 652
- canal. See Canals, Nile to Red Sea
- voyages to, 490
- Reduction gearing, 569
- Reed-bundle craft, 390, 433, 445
- Reefing, 597-8, 603-4, 608
- roller-, 458, 598, 613
- Regiment for the Sea*, 559 (j)
- Regulations Department. See Fa Tshao
- Regulations for (Construction) Work on Palaces and Public Buildings. . . . See *Yuan Nei Fu Kung Tien Chih Tso*
- 'Reinforced masonry', 103
- Reischauer, E. O. (i), 453
- Reisner, G. A. (i), 433 ff.
- Relay carriage system, 34 ff.
- Reliefs, 127
- Assyrian, 386-7
- of Buddhist ship, 457
- Han, 114, 116
- Hsiao-thang Shan tombs, 126-7, 444
- Sanchi, 387
- Wu Liang Tzhu, 444
- Religious cosmography, 568
- Religious persecution, 522
- Religious tolerance, 522, 533
- Religious wars, 533 (i)
- Reliquaries, 106
- Renaissance, 110, 145-6, 158, 178, 208, 365, 376, 504, 530, 534, 558
- Reorganised Pharmacopoeia. See *Chêng Lei Pên Tshao*
- Reservoir dams, 232 (b), 259 (d)
- Reservoirs, 212, 214, 216, 219, 224-5, 258-9, 264, 269, 282, 297, 315-16, 334, 373
- in Ceylon, 372
- Rest-houses. See *Lu*
- Restaurants (in post-stations), 36
- Restoration and Extension of the Ideas of the *Great Learning*. See *Ta Hsüeh Yen I Pu*
- 'Retainer Ships'. See *Kho Chou*
- Retention basins, 215, 236 ff., 365
- Réunion island, 501
- Revelationes* (Pseudo-Methodius), 56 (d), 57
- Reversing (by ships), 458 (c)
- Rhaetiae, 47
- Rhapsodic Ode on the Nymph of the Lo River. See *Lo Shan Fu*
- van Rhijnsburch, Jan (hydraulic engineer, +1413), 353 (d)
- Rhinoceros, as tribute, 442-3, 444
- Rhinoceros hide, 686
- Rhinoceros horns, 496, 537, 673
- Rhine, 151
- Rhône (R.)
- bridge, 175
- canal, 376 (d)
- Rhubarb, 18, 603
- Rhumb-lines, 568, 583
- Rialto, 175, 181
- Rib-frames (*wan chhai*), 439
- Ribbon development, 71, 74
- Ribeiro, Capt. João (+1685), 534
- Ricci, Matteo (Li Ma-Tou, Jesuit missionary, +1584), 534 (b), 540 (a), 586
- Riccio, Lake, 664
- Rice, 212, 218, 220, 222, 225, 266
- Rice Granary Road, 24, 28
- Rice transport, boats, 415
- Richard of Wallingford (mathematician, c. +1290), 556
- Riders in Public Transport. See *Kung Chhêng*
- Riquet, P. P. (hydraulic engineer, c. +1675), 353 (d)
- The River and the Canals, chapter of *Shih Chi*, q.v.
- River-control, 45, 214 ff., 344, 373
- River of Golden Sand, 198-9
- River Ode. See *Chiang Fu*
- River police, 267
- River Protection Works. See *Ho Fang Chih*
- River-ships. See Ships
- Roads
- Chhen-Tsang, 19-20, 22
- Flying-Fox Road, 26
- Linked Cloud Road, 20-1
- North-South Road, 22, 28, 347
- Old Silk Road. See Old Silk Road
- Pao-yeh Road, 20 ff., 30, 275
- Persian Royal Road, 2, 34-5
- Rice-Granary Road, 24, 28
- Road of the Golden (or the Stone) Oxen, 24, 28, 31, 171
- Road North of the Celestial Mountains, 18
- Road North of the Southern Mountains, 17, 28
- Road South of the Celestial Mountains, 18
- Road through the Willows (Liu-chung Lu), 18, 28
- Thang-lo Tao, 22

- Roads and road-building, 1 ff., 90, 277–8, 308
 central imperial lanes of, 7
 construction methods, 7, 16, 23, 26
 costs of construction, 30
 and expansion of the empire, 38
 extent of, 27 ff.
 length of, 14–15, 31
 in modern China, 33
 paved, 2 (c)
 Roman, 1 ff., 7, 15, 27 ff., 30, 34
 spiritual value of, 32 (c)
 standard widths of, 5, 254
 technical terms, 4, 20
 ‘Roaring Forties’, 511
 Robins, F. W. (2), 166, 190
 Roc, 501–2
 Rock, J. F. (1), 185
 Rock-crystal, from Fu-Sang, 541
 Rockets, 576, 600 (e)
 Rockhill, W. W. (1), 499
 Rod-linked suspension bridge. *See* Bridges, suspension
 la Roërie, G. (1), 626, 628, 655
 la Roërie & Vivielle, 282
 de Rojas Sarmiento, Juan (astronomer, +1550), 579
 Rojas’ projection, 579 ff.
 Rolled mat-shed, style of roof (*chüan phêng*), 133 (a)
 Roller-reefing. *See* Reefing
 Rolling suspensifier. *See* Scrape-dredge
 Román, Juan-Baptista (Royal Factor or Treasurer of the Philippines, +1584), 534 (b)
 Roman arch. *See* Arches, semicircular
 Roman architecture, 179
 Roman boats, 438, 452 (b), 511 (a)
 Roman bridges, 168
 Roman *castra*, 72
 Roman empire, 27 ff., 34, 47, 55, 474, 550
 trade, 519
 Roman galleys, 625, 626 (g)
 Roman-Indian contacts, 612, 616, 696
 Roman legionaries, 17, 693
 Roman roads, 1 ff., 7, 15, 27 ff., 30, 34
 Roman sails, 607
 Roman ships, 389, 591, 608, 628 (d), 631–2, 635, 657, 693
 Roman Syria, 34, 602, 612
 Romans, 3, 23, 38 (d), 135, 167, 169 (b), 170 (a), 376, 442, 486, 664
 navigation, 379
 Rome, 18, 24, 40 (g), 73 (b), 136, 145, 181, 365, 612
 Roof-material, 134
 Roofing over of deck, in Chinese warships, 683, 685, 687–8
 Roofs
 Chinese, 59, 63 ff., 68, 90–1, 94–5, 97, 99;
 convex barrel, 132–3; curvature of, 65, 100, 102, 127–9; flat, 132, 134; technical terms, 97 (c)
 European, 99
 Greek, 99 (a)
 Rope-bridges. *See* Bridges, suspension
 Ropes. *See* Cables
 Rosthorn Globe, 540, 587
 Rotte (river), 357
 Rowers, 445 ff., 450, 621, 626–7, 683, 698
 Rubber, 544 (e)
 ‘Rubio’ (South Chinese lorcha), 486
 Rudder-post, 632–3, 645, 650
 materials for, 414, 416
 of one of Chêng Ho’s ships, 481, 633 (b)
 Rudders, 358, 393, 408, 411, 429, 448, 468, 613, 620, 640 ff.
 ‘active’, 629 (b)
 balanced, 398–9, 425, 463, 632, 634 (f), 647, 649, 651, 655–6, 697–8
 at bow and stern, 425, 603, 619, 630
 fenestrated, 656, 697–8
 illustrations of, 647, 651, 655
 iron-bound, 401, 631 (c), 633, 636, 644, 654
 Korean, 643
 of Liang-shan ship, 479
 location of, 633
 materials for, 416, 644–6
 median, 648, 651
 methods of attachment, 632–3, 653 ff.
 of a Ming ship, 481
 in pottery ship model, 650–1
 quarter-, 418, 636, 642, 648, 656
 raising and lowering of, 642, 644 (a), 645, 648, 654
 in sea-junks, 399, 401, 404–5
 shape and length of, 641, 646, 653–4
 stern-post, 184, 391, 431, 453, 461, 474 (e), 509, 570, 626 ff., 631 ff., 638 ff., 653–4, 695, 697–8; co-existing with steering-oars or stern-sweeps, 642–3; in Europe, 635 ff., 655; technical terms, 638 ff.
 tackle-controlled, 652
 transmissions and origins, 651–4
 unbalanced, 631, 647
 Rudlov, J. (1), 684
 Rudolph, R. C. & Wên Yu, 114
 Rufiji (river), 497
 ‘Rule of the Guards’, 557
 Rules and Regulations (Chih Tu), section of *Ying Tsao Fa Shih*, q.v.
 Rumiantzov Museum, 424
 Russia, and Russians, 149, 471, 651
 Russian schooners, 437
 Russian technology, 16 (b)
 Rusting, 151 (k)
 Rutters, 382, 555–6, 559–60, 569, 573, 581, 583–4
 Sacred mountain, 137
 ‘Sacred Ship.’ *See* *Shen Chou*
 Sacrifices, 234, 253, 271, 317 (a), 346, 543 (c), 551, 668
 Sacrobosco (John of Holywood, English geographer, c. +1233), 585
 Saddles, 496
 Saenredam, Joh. (painter, +1600), 619 (d)
 Safe Journeys on the High Seas. *See* *Kairo Anshinroku*

- 'Safegarde de Sayers', 560 (c)
 Saffron, 603
 Sagres, School of. *See* School of Sagres
 Sai-Tien-Chhieh Shan-Ssu-Ting. *See* Sa'id Ajall Shams-al-Din
 Sa'id Ajall Shams-al-Din (provincial governor, *fl.* +1274), 297
 Sail-makers, 439 (b)
 Sailing arcs (in Atlantic navigation), 513, 558
 Sailing-barge construction, 315 (d)
 Sailing-directions, 382, 478 (e), 493, 582
 Sailing Races at the Fifth Month Festival. *See* Tuan Yang Ching Tu Thu
 Sailing-raft. *See* Rafts
 Sailing-ships, 440 (e), 455-6, 627, 679
 dependence on favourable winds, 608
 Sailing to windward, 462-3, 588, 591-2, 599, 603, 608, 617, 621, 626 (g), 645, 653
 earliest successful attempts at, 617, 625, 696
 Sails, 415, 423, 439, 451, 696
 advantage of lofty sails, 593
 and aerodynamics. *See* Aerodynamics
 bellying or taut, various opinions on, 592
 bowsprit-, 404-5, 591
 cloth, 457, 600, 602-3
 flatness of, 597-8
 fore-, 404, 604
 fore-and-aft, 696
 full-rigged, 594-5, 606, 611, 696-7
 gaff- or yacht-, 589, 591, 594, 606, 611, 625
 Indian Ocean bifid-mast sprit-, 589-90, 612 (a), 614 ff., 696
 Indonesian canted, 458, 589 ff., 599, 601, 606, 608-9, 611 ff., 616-17, 696
 jib-, 591, 611 (c)
 lateen, 416 (i), 472-3, 474 (d), 509-10, 513, 586, 589 ff., 593-4, 606, 608 ff., 614, 616-17, 625, 698; boom-, 612 (a), 616; combined with square-sail, 609-10, 696
 origin of, 611-12
 quasi-lug, 609, 611
 triangular, 609, 611, 617
 leg-of-mutton, 589, 591, 616-17
 lug-, 393, 399, 402, 425, 428, 455, 457-8, 470, 508, 589, 591, 594 ff., 598-9, 601 ff., 606, 614, 616, 618, 625, 642, 647-8, 684, 696-7; balance, 598-9, 612, 613 (j), 617, 697; origin of, 612-13; quadrilateral, 610
 main-, 404-5, 604
 mat-and-batten, 404-5, 453, 455, 457, 470, 472, 595-9, 602-3, 605, 625, 647-8, 697
 matting, 461 ff., 469, 485, 600-1, 605
 Melanesian double-mast sprit-, 589, 591, 599
 mizen-, 400, 404-5
 Oceanic (Polynesian) sprit-, 589-90
 oiled silk, 600 (e)
 oldest known record of, 607
 size of, 604
 sprit-, 393 (e), 472-3, 589 ff., 594, 598-9, 602, 606, 610 ff., 617, 625, 698; double-mast, 616, 696; in Europe, 614 ff., 696; triangular, 616-17
 square-, 404, 433, 455 ff., 472-3, 509, 513, 588 ff., 593-4, 598, 606, 608, 611, 613, 615, 647, 698
 stay-, 401, 591
 technical terms, 597, 604-5
 top-, 402, 404-5, 461, 591, 602-3, 609 (e); 'self-reefing', 613 (c)
 typical Chinese, 595 ff.
 Sakabe Kōhan (nautical writer, 1816), 382 (b), 584 (d)
 Sakhalin. *See* Karafuto
 Sakugen (Ming monk-envoy), 360 (e)
 Salcano, bridge at, 178
 Salinisation, 366 (d)
 Sallām al-Tarjamān (the Interpreter, *fl.* +843), 56
Salman and Morolf (ballad), 673 (c)
 Salt-boats, 308, 422, 430, 663
 Salt Canals, 308, 317 (c)
 Salt mines, 421 (b)
 Salting, 520
 Saltpetre, 684
 Salween (river), 25, 200, 222 (c), 233
 Salzman, L. F. (I), 107
 Sam-Po-Tai-Shan (San Pao Thai Shen, Chêng Ho), 494
 Sambiasi, Francisco (Pi Fang-Chi, Jesuit missionary, *fl.* +1629), 111
 Samos, conduit tunnel at, 376 (d)
 Sampans, 380, 389 (e), 391 ff., 416-17, 437, 444, 456, 614
 of Hangchow, 681
 mooring for, 659-60
 San-chhuan, 8
San Fu Huang Thu (Description of the Three Cities of the Metropolitan Area), 87, 645
 San-Hsia Thieh Chhiao, 202
 San-Hsing Chhiao, 171
 San Kuo (period), 86, 227, 267, 282-3, 623
 bridges, 171, 200
 canals, 308
 engineers, 277
 ships, 449, 679
San Li Thu (Illustrations of the Three Rituals), 6, 80-1
 San-mên Gorge, 21 (d), 23, 274 ff., 278-9, 310, 375 (a), 451
San Pao Thai-Chien Hsia Hsi-Yang Chi Thung Su Yen I. *See* Hsi-Yang Chi
San Tendai Gotaisan-Ki (Record of a Pilgrimage to the Thien-Thai Temples on Wu-thai Shan), 353
San Tshai Thu Hui (Universal Encyclopaedia), 395, 425
San Tzu Ching (Trimetrical Primer), 295
 San Wei Shan, 140, 199
 Sanchi, 69
 reliefs at, 387
 stone gateways at, 142 (h)
 'Sand-boat.' *See* Chiangsu, boats
 Sand-glass (hour-glass), 556, 569-70
 de Sande, Francisco (Governor of the Philippines, +1576), 534 (b)

INDEX

887

- von Sandrart, Joachim (+1675), 119 (a)
 Sang Chhin (Han hydrographic topographer), 324
 Sang Shan, 253
 Sanho regulator-sluice dam, 222 (d)
 de Santarém, João (Portuguese explorer, +1471), 505
 de Santarém, M. Visconde (2), 471
 Sanuto, Marino (geographer, +1306), 502
Sao (fascines), 341 ff.
Saphaea, 581
Sāqiyah, 666
 Saracens, 56, 313, 504
 Sarat Chandra Das (Indian traveller), 206
 Sarawak
 archaeological discoveries in, 461 (h)
 trade, 536–7
 Sardis, 2
 Sargasso Arc, 513
 Sassanian Kingdom (+226 to +637), 366–7
 Satmahal-prāsādaya, 138
 Saumarez (nautical inventor, +1720), 559 (l)
Sauna, 135 (a)
 de Saussure, L. (36), 584
 Scandinavia, 14 (a)
 boat construction, 389 (e), 681
 Scapulimancy, 124 (a), 544
 Scarifiers, 336
 Scarpe (river), 357
 Scene of the Emperor's Palanquin (painting by Ku Khai-Chih), 116
 Schafer, E. H. (10), 669
 Schanck, Capt. (+1790), 619 (d)
 Schlegel, G. (7a), 541
 School of Sagres, 504, 558
 Schooners, 611
 Schramm, C. C. (architectural writer, +1735), 208
 Science of Seeing. *See* *Shih Hsüeh*
 Scientific congress of +4, 37
 Scientific terminology, failure to develop, 403 (d)
 'Scłusa', 357 (f)
 Scour, 227 ff., 235, 335
 Scrape-dredger, 337–8, 343
 Screw propulsion, 419, 623 (b), 624–5
 Scroll-paintings, 86 (c), 107 (a)
 Sculling-oar. *See* Oars
 Sculptures, in Sumatra, 443
 Scyths, 159
 Sea-bottom samples, 555, 563
 Sea-charts, 555–6, 559
 See also Portolan charts
 'Sea-Hawk Ships.' *See* Hai-hu
 'Sea-hodometer', 559 (l)
 Sea Island Mathematical Classic. *See* *Hai Tao Suan Ching*
 Sea power, 488
 Sea-slugs, 538
 Sea terms. *See* Technical terms, nautical technology
 Sea-transport. *See* Transport
 Sea-walls, 154, 320 ff., 341
 Seals
 Damme, 637
 Dover, 636 (h)
 Elbing, 636
 Harderwyk, 637
 Ipswich, 636–7
 Kiel, 615
 of Louis de Bourbon, 474
 Stubbkjoeping, 636
 Wismar, 636
 Seamanship, Chinese superiority in, 625, 629 ff.
 Seasons, reversal of, 538 (d)
 Second World War. *See* World War II
 Secrecy, Portuguese policy of, 528, 557 (a)
 Secretarial Aides for Highways and Bridges. *See* Tao-chhiao Yuan-li
 Sediment-deposition, 228, 237–8
 Segalen, V., de Voisins, G., & Lartigue, J., 126
 Segmental arch. *See* Arches
 Segmental arch bridge. *See* Bridges
 Seining-boats, 392
 Séjourné, Paul (19th-century engineer), 182
 Senegal (river), 505
 Sennacherib (King of Assyria, r. –705 to –681), 356
 reliefs of, 446, 635
 'Septum' bulkhead. *See* Bulkheads, transverse
 de Sequeira, Gomes (explorer, +1525), 536
 Sernigi, Girolamo (Florentine merchant, +1499), 508
 'Serpentine' canal boat, 433 (c)
 Serrão, Francisco (explorer, +1512), 507
 Sesostris II (Egyptian Pharaoh, –1906 to –1888), 365 (f)
 Seven Compilations of Classified Manuscripts. *See* *Chhi Hsiu Lei Kao*
 Seventeen Arches Bridge, 171
 Severn bridge, 151 (l)
 Sewers, 76 (d)
 Sextant, reflecting, 559
 Seychelles, 501
 Sha chhuan ('Sand-boat'). *See* Chiangsu, boats
Sha-Chou Chi (Records of Shachow, Tunhuang), 165
 Sha-Kho-Shih. *See* Shan Ssu
 Sha-mên (islands), 416
 Shaching, 321
 Shāh Rukh (Timūrid Shāh, r. +1404 to +1446), 161
 Shan Chhien-Chih (writer, +5th century), 640–1
Shan Hai Ching (Classic of the Mountains and Rivers), 14 (a), 253, 541
 Shan-hai Kuan, 16, 47, 52
 Shan-Hua Ssu, 95 (c)
 Shan O (topographer of water-ways, +1059), 324
 Shan Ssu (Persian or Arab scholar, +1321), 325
 Shan-yang Yün-Tao (Shanyang Transport Canal), 282, 309, 314, 317–18, 351
 Shang (dynasty), 34, 43–4, 72, 93, 167, 186, 258, 263
 buildings, 122–3
 irrigation, 373 (f)
 ships, 439

- Shang bone inscriptions. *See* Inscriptions
- Shang-chün, 16
- Shang-hu, 341, 343
- Shang Shu Ta Chuan* (Great Commentary on the Shang Shu Chapters of the *Historical Classic*), 541
- Shang-Yen (mountain), 334
- Shangchih (mountains), 245
- Shanghai, 74, 220, 476, 485
- Shangtuan-to, 245
- Shansi, 16, 28, 48, 50, 178, 181, 202, 212, 220, 264 (b), 271, 273 ff.
- Shansi mountains, 3, 178, 245, 281
- Shantan, canal system, 297–8
- courtyard house at, 131 (g)
- Shantung, 8, 31, 48, 53–4, 148, 220, 222, 226–7, 240, 282, 307, 312, 327, 333, 453
- ships of, 416
- tombs, 140 (a)
- Shanyang Tu, 309
- The Shanyu (Khan of the Huns), 18
- Shao Hao (legendary emperor), 252 (b)
- Shao Hsin-Chhen (official, *d.* +4), 267, 280–1, 345
- Shao-hsing, 153
- tide-gates near, 321 (d)
- Shao Pei. *See* Ssu-Ssu Pei
- Shao-po, 352, 354
- ‘Sharawadgi’, 75
- Shark people (*chiaio jen*), 678
- Sharks, 668, 672
- and pearls, 677–8
- ‘Sharp-edge painting’, 106
- Shatang, 219–20
- Shê chhuan. *See* ‘Snake-boat’
- Shê-Yang Hu, 272
- Shear-walls, 168, 170
- Sheep, 475
- Sheerness Boat Store, 104
- Sheet-piling, 328
- Sheets (ropes), 406, 413, 590, 605
- material for, 414
- multiple, 595 ff., 598, 613–14, 697–8
- ‘Shelf-roads’, 20, 22 ff., 198
- at San-mên, 277–8
- Shen Chhiung (official and sea-wall builder, *fl.* +1169), 321
- Shen Chou* (‘Sacred Ship’), 430, 603 (c)
- Shen Chu-Liang (Lord of Shê, *c.* –500), 271 (d)
- Shen Fu-Chün (*c.* +150), stele of, 126 (d)
- Shen-hsien, 229
- Shen Huai-Yuan (writer on the South, +4th century), 605
- Shen Kua (+11th-century astronomer, engineer, and high official), 36 (e), 80, 82, 84, 115, 126 (e), 141, 230, 311 (b), 322–3, 331–2, 341, 344, 351 ff., 359, 568, 624 (a), 660
- Shen Li (writer on flood-protection works, *c.* +1045), 324–5
- Shen Pang (architectural writer, *fl.* +1593), 87
- Shen-Pei Chhiao, 163
- Shen-po-tzu. *See* ‘Fan-tail’ boat
- Shen-Thung Ssu, 139
- Shen Tsung (Sung emperor, *r.* +998 to +1022), 154, 660
- Shen Tzu* (The Book of Master Shen), 343
- Shen-yang, 52
- tomb-temples at, 143
- Shêng Chi Chi* (Records of Holy Places), 70 (a)
- Shêng Hsi-Ching (Prefectural Vice-Administrator, +1089), 354
- Shêng Hsien Tao Thung Thu Tsan* (Comments on Pictures of the Saints and Sages, Transmitters of the Tao), 63–4
- Shêng Shui Yen Than Lu* (Fleeting Gossip by the River Shêng), 164
- Shensi, 5, 16, 19, 28, 42, 47, 54, 121, 133, 189, 202, 210, 212, 239, 283, 309
- Shigisan Engi Emaki (Japanese scroll-painting), 107 (a)
- Shih, Master (Taoist adept, –215), 553 (d)
- Shih-Chai Shan, excavations at, 447
- Shih Chhi (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* –318), 271–2
- Shih-chhi Khung Chhiao. *See* Seventeen Arches Bridge
- Shih Chhien-Hsiang (engineer, *fl.* +1522), 289 (b), 293 (f)
- Shih-chhuan Ho, 287
- Shih Chi* (Historical Record), 52, 230, 232, 285, 299, 324, 345–6, 378, 551, 553
- Shih Ching* (Book of Odes), 4, 123, 129, 147, 160, 162, 186, 258, 269, 373, 396, 440, 620
- Shih Chou* (Nautical Nomenclature), 381, 403
- Shih Chun-Shêng, 428
- Shih Ho-Chi (cartographer, +1564), 499
- Shih Hsüeh* (Science of Seeing), 112
- Shih I Chi* (Memoirs on Neglected Matters), 395, 665, 674 (a)
- Shih-ku, 199
- Shih Kung; Explanations Concerning Palaces and Halls, chapter of the *Erh Ya*, q.v.
- Shih Kung Hsiao Chi* (Brief Record of Buildings and Palace Halls), 80 (d)
- Shih-Ling Kuan pass, 276
- Shih Lu (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* –120), 299, 300, 303 ff., 346, 375, 441 (e)
- Shih-Mên Kuan, 199–200
- Shih Ming* (Dictionary of Terms), 101, 600, 623, 639, 680
- Shih-niu Tao (Road of the Stone Oxen), 24
- Shih Pien-Yuan (astronomer, *fl.* +1289), 313
- Shih Po Shih (Trade Commissioner), 453, 462, 465
- Shih San Ling. *See* ‘Thirteen Tombs’
- Shih Shuo Hsin Yü* (New Discourse on the Talk of the Times), 104
- Shih Tha Yen (lit. stone gate dam), 362
- Shih to* (spillway), 362
- Shih Tsu (Khubilai Khan, emperor of the Yuan, *r.* +1260 to +1294), 79, 198–9, 477–8
- Shih Wan-Sui (general, *fl.* +596), 199–200, 201 (a)
- Shih-wei (branch of the Chhi-tan people), 14 (a)
- Shih Wu Chi Yuan* (Records of the Origins of Affairs and Things), 89, 125 (f)

- Shihmo An-Chê (Yuan engineer), 161
 Shilka (river), 421
 Shimonoseki, scroll-paintings in shrine at, 647, 648 (a)
 Shingü, Jofuku's tomb, shrine at, 553
 Shinyōdō, 95 (c)
 Ship armour, 476, 664, 682 ff.
 iron, 687–8
 and paddle-wheel boats, 689
 Ship-building, 102 (b), 315 (d), 382 ff., 412 ff., 450, 458, 460, 476
 and bamboo, 389, 391, 394, 396, 695
 Chinese superiority in, 509
 technical terms, 402 ff., 411 ff.
 Ship-mills, 336
 Ship models. *See* Models
 'Ship of the immortals.' *See* Hsien chuan
 Ship railway, 365
 Shipowners, private, 526 (f)
 Ships, 379 ff.
 characteristic Chinese build of, 439, 447–8, 455, 462, 480–1, 613, 695–9
 development of, 383 ff.
 double-hulled. *See* Double-hulled craft
 drawings and paintings of, 423 ff., 463, 642, 646 ff.
 flat-bottomed, 429–30, 618, 620, 695, 698
 geographical factors in differentiation of, 429
 hybrid, 433 ff., 461, 510
 iron, 656, 684, 697
 paddle-wheel. *See* Paddle-wheel ships
 repairs to, 462, 468
 river-, 447–8, 460, 463, 482, 618–19, 629, 632, 649
 sailing-. *See* Sailing-ships
 sea-going, 449, 455, 464, 474, 575, 619, 655;
 decline of, 524 ff.
 sewn, 440 (a), 458, 460, 465, 475, 486, 651
 shape, 417–20, 429–30, 603, 678
 sharp-ended, 440, 450, 472
 size, 359–60, 452 (b), 475, 480–2, 572, 685, 689 (a), 695
 speed, 559, 564 (e), 583
 technical terms, 415–16, 439–40, 462, 680
 types of, 423 ff., 678
 war-. *See* Warships
 wrecking of, 275, 354, 410
 See also Junks
 Shipwrights, 382, 389 (g), 412, 482, 484, 526
 absence of blue-prints, 413, 569 (b)
 Shipwrights' draughts, 413 (i), 480
 Shipyards, 412–13, 479–80, 527
 near Nanking, 382, 481–3
 'Shock cycle' in tactics, 449 (e)
 A Short Theoretical Study of Canal Construction.
 See Kou Hsüeh Chiang Li Hsiao Chi
 Shorter, Edward (nautical inventor, 1800), 624
 Shou (to receive), 440
 Shou-Ching (monk, fl. +1178), 154
 Shou-hsien, 271, 281
 Shou Lao (spirit of longevity), 537–8
 Shouyang, 276
 Shrewsbury, flax mill at, 104
 Shrines
 one-storey, 139
 to tutelary field-gods, 132
 Shrouds (nautical, standing rigging), 457
 Shu (State), 15, 19, 21, 24–5, 28, 86, 288, 389 (e)
 Shu Ching (Historical Classic), 250, 253, 329, 620, 677
 Shu Hsü Chih Nan (Literary South-Pointer), 125 (b), 402
 Shu I Chi (Records of Strange Things), 678 (b)
 Shu Shu Chiu Chang (Mathematical Treatise in Nine Sections), 106 (e), 331
 Shu Yuan Tsa Chi (The Bean-Garden Miscellany), 335
 Shuang (mat-sails), 605
 Shui Cha Chi (Record of the Building of the Pound-Locks in the Chenchow District), 352
 Shui Chan I Hsiang Lun (Advisory Discourse on Naval Warfare), 423
 Shui Chan Ping Fa Nei Ching (Internal Manual of Naval Tactics), 679
 Shui Ching (Waterways Classic), 300, 324
 Shui Ching Chu (Commentary on the Waterways Classic), 172, 189, 300, 305, 324
 Shui-Hêng (Water Balancer or Allocator), 264, 267
 Shui-Hêng Chien (Directorate of Hydraulic Control), 268
 Shui kwei, 174, 315 (e)
 Shui li ('benefit of water'), 214, 324
 Shui Li Shu (Treatise on Water Conservancy), 324
 Shui Li Thu Ching (Illustrated Manual of Civil Engineering), 324
 Shui Li Wu Lun (Five Essays on Water Conservancy), 325
 Shui môn (water-gate), 349, 354
 Shui Ping Hsing (constellation), 583
 Shui Shih Chi Yao (Essentials of Sea Affairs), 424
 Shui Tao Thi Kang (Complete Description of Waterways), 326
 Shui to (spillway), 362
 Shuldham, M. (1), 655
 Shun (legendary emperor), 248
 Shun-Chih Chhiao, 159
 Shun Fêng Hsiang Sung (Fair Winds for Escort), 382, 576, 581–2
 Shuo Wên. *See* Shuo Wên Chieh Tzu
 Shuo Wên Chieh Tzu (Analytical Dictionary of Characters), 34, 600
 Shuofang (river), 42
 Siam, 116, 128, 444, 491, 582
 dugout canoes, 433 (e)
 voyages to, 489
 Sian, 45, 240
 pagoda at, 101, 139
 Pei Lin Museum, 107
 See also Chhang-an
 Siberia, 14 (a), 421, 441, 540
 Siberian peoples, 386
 Sickman, L. & Soper, A. (1), 60
 Side ponds, 345

890

Sidon, harbour-works at, 356
 Siege towers, 609 (e)
 Sierra Leone, 505, 513
 Sighting-tube, 332, 568, 575-6
 Sigiriya, Ceylon, 75 (b)
 Sign-posts, 32
 Signalling, 35, 37, 661
 Sikang, 189, 210
 Sikkim, 189
 Silk, 24, 496, 504, 508, 519
 as means of exchange, 518, 530, 603
 Silkworm-oaks, 245
 Silla Kingdom (Korea), 454
 Silla, King of (+300), 453 (g)
 Silt, 215, 221, 223-4, 227 ff., 231-2, 237-9, 267, 280, 287, 293, 335, 337, 366, 369
 Silver, as means of exchange, 519-20, 603
 Simkhovitch, V. G., 225
 The Simpleton of the Northern Mountain, 252, 263
 Singapore, 439, 550, 587
 Singapore Main Strait, 565
 Singhalese merchants, 453
 Sining, 207
 Sinkiang, 3, 17, 26, 29, 33, 189, 198, 651
 Sino-Indian culture contact, 385, 696
 Sino-Japanese war, 183, 266
 Sino-Siamese junks, 461
 de Sintra, Gonçalo (Portuguese explorer, *d.* +1444), 514
 de Sintra, Pedro (Portuguese explorer, *c.* +1460), 505
 Sion, J. (1), 219
 Sirén, O. (1), 58, 64-5, 170; (3), 58; (4), 58; (5), 42-3
 Sites, of buildings, 60-1, 69
 Sitting postures, 136-7
 'Six-Character Teaching', 250 (a), 294
 'Sixty Famous Places', 185
 'Size constancy', 117 (d)
 Skachkov, K. A. (1), 424
 Skempton, A. W., 318-19
 Sketch of Sea-Transport during the Yuan. See *Yuan Hai Yün Chih*
 'Skin-boats' (*phi chhuan*), 386
 Skinner, F. (2), 59
 Skis, 14 (a)
 Skyscrapers, 74 (e), 104
 Slanting struts. See *Inverted V-braces*
 Slates, 134
 Slave trade, 506, 514, 517, 524, 529, 533
 Slaves and slavery, 90-1, 263, 454, 462, 470 (c), 517, 519, 626, 696
 Slipways, 360
 double, 344 ff., 350 ff., 359, 363-4
 technical terms, 363
 Slocum, Joshua, Captain (1888), 485 (g)
 Sloping ground, and Chinese architecture, 63
 Sluice-gates, 215, 224-5, 229 (e), 230-1, 235, 267, 281, 287, 296 (d), 297, 316, 321, 327, 329, 344 ff., 355 ff.
 in - 1st century, 304
 in Ceylon, 372

INDEX

 first invention and use of, 251 (b)
 ground-, 345
 in Kuanhsien system, 376
 tide-, 357, 359
 Smeaton, J., 559 (l)
 Smith, Adam, 1, 3, 32
 Smith, F. P. (1838), 419
 Smith, H. S. (1), 181
 Smoke-screen equipment, 684
 Smuggling, 37
 by pearl-divers, 671
 Smyth, H. W., 383, 399 (e), 456, 597-8, 613
 'Snake-boat' (Shê chhuan), 437 (d)
 Snowshoes, 14 (a)
 Social and economic change, 263
 Social barrier, against 'mechanical' workers, 82
 Social conditions
 and building patterns, 69
 and irrigation problems, 224 ff.
 Socialism, 319
 Society for the History of Chinese Architecture, 1
 Socotra Island, 506, 514
 Sodré, Vicente (Portuguese explorer, *c.* +1500), 506
 Sofala, 494, 497, 499, 506-7, 528, 533-4
 Sogdiana, 2, 18
 Solar declination tables, 559
 Solar haloes, 582
 Solstices, 578
 Solstitial colure, 578 ff.
 Somali coast, 465, 494, 498
 Somaliland, 490, 494-5, 497-8, 506
 Söndök of Silla (Queen in Korea, *r.* +632 to +647), 139 (b)
 Sone Bridge (in Uttar Pradesh), 158
 Soper, A., 67; (2), 70
 Sorites, 223
 Sorting offices (*yu thou, yu chü*), 35
 Sostratus of Cnidus (-270), 661
 Soundings, 555, 563, 582
 Sounds and Meanings in the Vinaya. See *I Chhieh Ching Yin I*
 de Sousa, Cid (Portuguese explorer, +1453), 505
 South Africa. See *Africa, South*
 South America. See *America, South*
 South China Seas, 460, 477, 550, 617
 South Kensington Science Museum, 424
 South pole (terrestrial), 587
 South Sea Islands, 536
 Southern Cross, 558 (b), 559, 565-6, 583
 Southern Lake Collection of Poems. See *Nan Hu Chi*
 Southern passage, search for, 504
 Southern Sung (dynasty), 360, 416 (b), 526
 navy, 476-7, 688
 Soya-bean oil, 664
 Spaarndam, 357, 364
 'Spade-snout' (*hua tsui*), 300, 302-3, 305
 Spain, and the Spanish, 39, 159, 472-3, 475, 506-7, 520, 524, 684, 696
 Spangenberg's 'Audacity Factor', 180, 182
 Spanish Armada, 452 (b)

INDEX

891

- Spathary embassy, 149 (b)
 Specifications for the 'Wooden Dragon' Sheet-Piling Pile-Driver. *See* *Mu Lung Chhêng Kuei*
 Speckhart, G., 570
 Spectacles, 494
 Spencer, J. E. (1), 59
 Sphericity of the earth, 585
 Spices, 496, 504, 508, 519-20
 van Spilbergen, J. (artist, +1619), 617
 Spillways, 249, 293, 300, 302, 304, 313, 362-3
 in Ceylon, 372
 technical terms, 362, 372
 Spinnaker, 404-5, 613
 Spinning, 296
 'Spirit-boats', 446 (b)
 Spiritual Constitution of the Universe. *See* *Ling Hsien*
 Springs, 333
 Sprit-sail. *See* Sails
 Square-pallet chain-pump. *See* Pumps
 Square-sails. *See* Sails
 Squared-spiral motif, 544 (i)
 Srinagar, 166
 Ssu (temple), 70
 Ssu (river), 232, 269, 307
 Ssu-chhê Shu-chang (Quadriga Elders), 37
 Ssu-Chhêng-Pu, 444
 Ssu Hsien (Director of Communications), 4, 254
 Ssu *Khu Chhuan Shu* (Complete Library of the Four Categories of Literature), 325, 425
 Ssu Khung (Minister of Works), 30, 124, 268
 Ssu-Li Chiao-Wei, 30
 Ssu Mên Tha (shrine building), 139
 Ssu *Ming Tho-Shan Shui Li Pei Lan* (Irrigation Canals of the Mount Tho District), 324
 Ssu-shui, 36, 307, 310
 Ssu-Ssu Pei (Peony Dam), 271, 281
 Ssu Thu (Master of Lands), 124
 Ssu Yo (Four-Mountains), 247-8
 Ssuma Chhien (Han Historiographer-Royal), 15, 21, 53, 160, 226, 232, 234, 269 ff., 286, 288, 300, 333, 374 (f), 378, 551, 553
 Ssuma Hsiang-Ju (scholar, poet and road engineer, -130), 25, 36
 Ssuma Kuang (historian, +1067), 549
 Ssuma Piao (scholar, +240 to +305), 459
 Ssuma Than (father of Ssuma Chhien), 286 (a)
 Ssuma Tsho (general, -312), 441 (c)
 Stanch. *See* Flash-lock
 Standard dimensions
 architecture, 67-8, 89 (e)
 canals, 255
 'Standard of (the goddess) Ma Tsu', 407
 Standardisation of gauge of wheels, 5
 Standardisation of planning in architecture, 66-7
 Stanhope, third Earl (*c.* +1790), 624, 655
 Star Charts and Stellar Prognostications of the Sea People. *See* *Hai Chung Hsing Chan Hsing Thu*
 'Star-chess', 546 (h)
 Star culmination tables, 559
 Stars
 altitude of, 566-7, 573 ff.
 circumpolar, 554, 557, 583-4
 decan-, 555
 of the equatorial lunar mansions, 583
 invisible, 573
 navigation by, 560 ff.
 sights, 583
 southern, 572
 Stasis, 268
 'State slaves.' *See* 'Government slaves'
 Staunch. *See* Stanch
 Staunton, G. L., 33 (e), 316-17, 347, 364
 Stay-sails. *See* Sails
 Steam heating, 104 (c)
 Steam-ships, 417, 419
 iron, 420, 430
 Mississippi, 437 (c)
 Stecknitz Canal, 304 (a), 358-9
 Steel, 86, 104, 197, 201 (a), 277, 563 (g)
 Steel and concrete construction, 103, 104 (c)
 Steel-frame lattice, 97
 Steering apparatus, 448, 627 ff., 641, 644
 technical terms, 628, 638 ff., 644
 vertical, 633
 Steering galleries, 607 (g)
 Steering-oars. *See* Oars
 Stein, Sir Aurel (3, 4), 121; (10), 51
 Steinman, D. B., 196
 Steles, 267 (b), 297-8, 352
 set up by Chuko Liang, 201 (a)
 at Galle, Ceylon, 522
 to goddess Thien-Fei, 523
 of the Han period, 21-2, 126
 of the Liu Chhao period, 646
 from Ming temples, 143-4
 from Thang palaces, 107
 Stempost, 388, 390, 426, 436, 445, 473, 695
 Stern, 445
 crooked, 430-1
 of Egyptian ships, 433, 653
 forward-curving, 698
 Stern-gallery, 648, 698
 Stern-sweep, 406, 431, 447, 463, 607 (g), 620, 627, 629, 631, 635, 640-1, 643-4, 646-7, 649, 697
 limitations of, 632
 Stern-wheelers. *See* Boats, paddle-wheel
 Stern-post, 388, 390, 436, 445, 627, 653, 695
 slanting, 653
 Stern-post rudder. *See* Rudders
 Stevenson, Robert (1821), 208
 Stevin, Simon, 421 (h)
 'Stomach-strikers', 678 ff.
 Stone, 69 (b), 90-1, 134, 174
 imitation of wood in, 90, 126
 Stone causeway, 174
 Stone-chimes, 255
 'Stone of weeping', 204
 Stone Pillar Mountain. *See* Chieh-Shih
 Stonegate Pass. *See* Shih-Mên Kuan

- Stop-log gates, 215 (a), 347–8, 350, 353, 362, 660 (i)
- Storage-pits, 121
- Storax, 530
- Story of the White Snake Pagoda. See *Pai Shê Chuan*
- Strabo (geographer, –63 to +19), 365 (f), 585, 612
- Strainer-beams, 162–3
- Strakes, 384, 388, 390, 412
morticing of, 389
- Strange Matters. See *Lu I Chi*
- Strange Sea Names and Strange Sea Things. See *Hai Wu I Ming Chi*
- Strange Southern Ways of Men and Things. See *Ling Piao Lu I*
- Strange Things of the South. See *Nan Chou I Wu Chih*
- Straub, H. (1), 660
- Streamline flow, 628–9, 634
- Strength-of-materials tests, 158
- Strutt, William (+1756 to +1830), 104 (a)
- Stuart, G. A. (1), 532
- Stubbkjoeping, seal of, 636
- Studies on the Districts in the Two Thang Capitals. See *Thang Liang Ching Chhêng Fang Khao*
- Studies on the Intercourse and Trade with Chinese and Barbarians. See *Kai Tsüsho-Ko*
- Studies on the Oceans East and West. See *Tung Hsi Yang Khao*
- Study of Halls and Buildings. See *Kung Shih Khao Stüpa*. See *India*
- Su Chang (general, fl. +928), 203
- Su Chhê (official, +1087), 315 (e)
- Su-chhien, 316
- Su Chhin (–4th-century statesman), 266, 270
- Su Jung (military engineer, c. +594), 199–200
- Su-Kan-La (pretender to the throne of north-western Sumatra, c. +1413), 515
- Su-lo Ho, 49
- Su Sung (astronomer and statesman, +1020 to +1101), 569
- Su Thien-Chio (historian, c. +1360), 667
- Su Tsung (Thang emperor, r. +756 to +762), 207
- Su Tung-Pho (poet and official, +11th century), 230, 321 (d), 396, 649 (a)
- Su Tzu* (Book of Master Su), 266 (i)
- Su Wu (ambassador, c. +250), 449
- Suan-tsao, 232
- Sub-Directorate of Fords, Ferries and Bridges. See *Chu Ching Chien*
- Submarine, 422 (f)
- Suchow (Anhui), 231, 307
- Suchow (Chiangsu), 8, 309, 491 (h)
bridge at, 170
stone map of, 107
transport boats in district of, 415
- Suchow (Kansu), 17
inscriptions on drum-tower at, 18 (c)
- Sudan, 521
- Sugawara no Michizane (Japanese minister, +845 to +903), ship of, 650 (a)
- Sui (dynasty), 31, 89, 128, 143, 227, 277, 282–3, 308, 478
boats and ships, 386, 451, 691
bridges, 180, 197, 199
canals, 273, 285, 306 ff.
Great Wall, 50, 54
town-planning, 73
- Sui (river), 270
- Sui Jen (Grand Extensioner, or Minister of Agriculture), 5, 254
- Sui Shih* (History of the Sui Dynasty), 199
- Sui Shu* (History of the Sui Dynasty), 561, 689, 691
- Sui Wên Ti (emperor, r. +581 to +600), 199
- Sui Yang Ti (emperor, r. +605 to +616), 436 (e)
- Sulphur, 684
- Sumatra, 186, 489, 511, 565, 571–2, 582, 586
sculptures, 443
- Sumerian Mesopotamia. See *Mesopotamia*
- Summer Palace (Peking), 61, 171
- Summit canals. See *Canals*
- Sumptuary laws, 67 (a)
- Sun
amplitude tables, 559
observations, 559 (b), 573
positions, 578
rising point of, 583
- Sun-shadow lengths, 561
- Sun Chhêng-Yu (+10th-century general), 105
- Sun Chho Tzu* (The Book of Master Sun Chho), 639
- Sun Chhüan (first King of Wu State in the Three Kingdoms period, r. +222 to +252), 449 (e), 640
- Sun Fang (+4th century), 639, 649
- Sun Fang Pieh Chuan* (Unofficial Biography of Sun Fang), 639
- Sun Hai-Po (2), 445
- Sun Hao (last King of Wu State in the Three Kingdoms period, r. +264 to +280), 694
- Sun-La (possibly Sofala), 499
- Sun Li *et al.* (1), 217
- Sun Yat-Sen, 251
- Sun Yen (+3rd-century philologist), 160
- Sundial analemma, 579
- Sundial-compasses, 556 (b)
- Sung (dynasty), 31, 227, 476, 478, 496, 536
anchors, 660
architecture, 66, 81, 87, 131, 140
bridges, 150–1, 153, 158, 173–4, 180
coins, 498
diving techniques, 673
dry docks, 660
hydraulic engineering, 217, 311, 268, 282 ff., 308, 322, 328, 335, 350, 362
models, 105
navigation, 379, 382, 569
navy, 477, 667, 681 (b)
oars, 621
painters, 112, 115, 150, 647, 654

INDEX

893

- Sung (dynasty) (*cont.*)
 plans of Thang palaces, 107
 post-station system, 36
 roads, 277–8
 ships, 402, 409, 456–7, 481, 621, 682 (e), 696
 Sung (State), 269–70, 272
 war against, 477
 Sung Chhi (Sung scholar), 681
Sung Hui Yao Kao (Codex of Administrative Law of the Sung Dynasty), 359, 575, 667
 Sung Li (Ming engineer), 315–16, 350 (a), 410 (b), 479 (f), 526
 Sung Shan, 138
Sung Shih (History of the Sung Dynasty), 324, 351, 354, 393, 496
 Sung Ta-Jen (1), 531
 Sung Ying-Hsing (encyclopaedist of technology, +1637), 382, 409–10, 412–13, 415, 423, 452 (b), 465, 603–4, 619, 634, 645, 659, 668, 673
 Sung-Yo Ssu, pagoda at, 138
 Sung Yün (traveller, fl. +519), 197–8
 Sunga dynasty, 367
Sungson Chikchirok (Guide for Shipmasters), 584 (d)
 Sunshu Ao (minister of State, c. –606), 271, 373
 Supārāga (famous pilot, incarnation of the Buddha), 555
 Superintendent of Foreign Trade. *See* Shih Po Shih
 Superintendent of Posts. *See* Tu Yu
 Superintendent of Traffic Police. *See* Yeh Lu Shih
 Superintendent of Waterways Police, 255 (a)
 Superintendent-General of Convict Labour. *See* Thu Ssu-Khung
 Supplementary Information for the History of the Present (Thang) Dynasty. *See* *Thang Kuo Shih Pu*
 Survey instruments, 329 (b), 331, 372 (d)
 Surveyors and survey methods, 21, 263, 331–2, 568
 Susa, 2
 Suspension bridges. *See* Bridges
 Suspension-carriage, 231
 Swahili coast, 497, 499, 514
 Swahili literature, 497
 Swape, 338
 Sweden, 676
 Swimming aids, 387
 Swing-bridges, 159
 Symbolic-correlation philosophy. *See* Correlative thinking
 Symbolic-cosmography. *See* Cosmography
 Syr-Daria (river), 440
 Syracuse, siege of, 693 (c)
 Syria. *See* Roman Syria
 Szechuan, 19, 24–5, 27–8, 30, 45, 142, 151, 221, 227, 247, 261, 442, 623, 679
 bridges, 162–3, 173, 187, 189, 202–3, 210
 brine industry, 414 (b), 659, 664
 buildings, 133
 canals, 272, 290, 375, 378
 family temple in, 40
 Han reliefs from, 114
 sailing craft, 394, 422, 431
 steles, 126
 Western Expedition against, 687–8
 Szechuan–Shensi highway, 23
Szechuan Yen Fa Chih (Memorials of the Salt Industry of Szechuan and its Control), 663
 Ta-Chhêng Tien, 132
 Ta-Chhin. *See* Roman Syria
 Ta-chien-lu, double-rope bridge at, 185
Ta Chuan (The Great Appendix, of the *I Ching*), 125
 Ta Chung-Kuang (Chhing writer on painting), 113
 Ta-Han (Buriat region of Siberia), 540–1
 Ta-hsing, 75 (j)
Ta Hsiieh Yen I Pu (Restoration and Extension of the Ideas of the *Great Learning*), 425
 Ta-i ('Great wing' ships), 678
 Ta-ming, 281, 310, 336
Ta Ming Hui Tien (History of the Administrative Statutes of the Ming Dynasty), 527 (a)
 Ta Ming ode, 160
 Ta-Ming Kung (palace), 107, 206
 Ta-pa Shan, 19
 Ta-san Pass, 19
 Ta Tan (river), 310
 Ta Thien-Phing (spillway), 300
 Ta-thung, 26, 48, 106
 pagoda at, 138
 Ta-Thung Ho (R.), 298
 Ta Thung Kuan Thi Chü Ssu (Board of Naval Architecture), 480
 Ta tsung. *See* Grand Fleets
 Ta-tu Ho (R.), 202
 Ta-Yang Chhiao, 160 (g)
 Ta-Yen Tha (Great Wild Goose Pagoda), 101, 139
Ta Yuan Hai Yün Chi (Records of Maritime Transportation of the Yuan Dynasty), 478
Ta Yuan Tshang Khu Chi (Record of the Granaries (and the Grain Transport System) of the Yuan Dynasty), 312 (d)
 Tabernacle (of mast), 398–9, 401, 406, 408, 455
 in canal ship, 411
 Table-Talk at Phingchow. *See* *Phing-Chou Kho Than*
 Tables (furniture), 136
 Tablets (instrument for taking star altitudes). *See* *Chhien hsing pan*
 Taccola, Jacopo Mariano (engineer, +1438), 347 (f)
 Tacking, 590 (a), 593–4, 604–5, 615 (f)
 by reversing, 612
 Tagus (R.), 511
 Tahiti, sails of, 606, 615
 Tai, 26, 48
Tai (double slipways, dams or dykes), 363, 365
 Tai Chen (Chhing scholar), 324
 Tai Shou (Shu official, +1370), 688

- Tai Tsung (Thang emperor, *r.* +762 to +779), 207
- Taira, 648
- Takezaki Suenaga (+13th-century Japanese artist), 477 (c)
- Taklamakan Desert, 17–18
- Talud Island canoes, 435 (e)
- Tali, 193, 199
pagodas at, 137
- Talka pass, 56
- Tamamushi portable model shrine, 128 (c)
- Tamerlane. *See* Timür Lang
- Tamils, 367–8
- Tamped earth. *See* *Terre pisé*
- Tan (picul), 25, 228, 230, 412, 451, 452
- Tan, Prince of Yen (–232), 159
- Tan people. *See* Tribal peoples
- Tan-chia river-people, 667
- Tan-Fu (semi-legendary chieftain), 123
- Tan tshai* (a module), 68
- Tang-way*, 620
- Tanganyika, 498
- Tanguts, 207
- Tangyang, temple at, 141
- Tanjore, 367
- Tanka people, 668 (d)
- Tankwa*, 384
- Tantrism, 206
- Tanyang, 318
- Tao-An (+4th-century monk), 459 (e)
- Tao-chhiao Yuan-li (Secretarial Aides for Highways and Bridges), 37
- Tao-Hsüan (monk, +596 to +667), 70 (a)
- Tao-Hsün (monk and bridge-builder, *d.* +1278), 154
- Tao I Chih Lüeh* (Records of the Barbarian Islands), 495, 536
- Tao-Yü (monk, +844), 26 (c)
- Taoist temples. *See* Temples
- Taoist paradise, 289 (d)
- Taoists, 32, 85 (a), 137, 234, 249–50, 256 (a), 265, 268, 296, 392 (h), 403 (d), 552–3, 562
and architecture, 69, 129
and artificial pearls, 677–8
and diving techniques, 674
and garden-planning, 75
and mystical anatomy, 549 (b)
and ship-building, 399 (f), 480
- Taprobane, boats of, 612
- Tarai-bume*. *See* Kettle-boat
- Tarim Basin, 17, 51
- Tartana* rig, 609 (e)
- Tashkurgan, 187
- Tasman (explorer, *fl.* +1618 to +1627), 536, 587
- Tasmania, 540, 587
- Tavoleta*. *See* Kamäl
- Tax-grain, 32, 214, 225, 227, 270, 273, 310, 311–12, 319, 351, 359, 478, 527
- Tax-Grain Water Transport and Granaries. *See* *Tshao Yün Fu Khu Tshang Yü*
- Taxation, 38, 225, 257, 260–1, 264, 330, 360, 480
- Taylor, E. G. R. (8), 572
- Tea, 519
- Tea-clippers, 610 (c)
- Technical innovations. *See* Invention and technical innovation
- Technical terms
anchors, 657 ff.
architecture and building, 38–9, 59, 67–8, 80, 82 ff., 86, 92 ff., 125
bridges, 164–5, 168 ff., 174
cables, 191
canals, 255
canoes (double), 392
frames (of buildings), 99 (e)
furniture, 136
gabions, 341
geometry, 110–11
grappling-irons, 690, 692
houses, or parts of houses, 119–20
hydraulic engineering, 341 (d), 372
irrigation, 260, 368
junks, 397 ff.
land utilisation, 258
leeboards, 618–19
lock-gates, 354–5
nautical technology, 381, 402 ff.
oars, 621
painting, 112
post-stations, 35–6
rafts, 390, 395–6
roads, 4
roofs, 97 (c)
rudders, 640 ff.
sails and sailing, 597, 604–5
ship-building, 411 ff.
ships, 439–40, 680; sea-going, 415–16
slipways, 363
spillways, 362
steering apparatus, 628, 638 ff.
temples, 120
town-planning, 72 (d)
walls, 38 ff., 42
water-gates, 349
yulohs, 622–3
- Technology, Chinese
partial decline of, 526
Western misconceptions of, 427, 429
- Tees bridge, 208
- Teheran, 334
- Tehuantepec, isthmus of, 365
- Teleostean fishes, 677
- Telford, Thomas, 182 (a), 208
- Temples, 60, 88
architecture, 58, 70, 95 (b)
Baalbek, 153 (c)
Buddhist, 58–9, 70, 130
Chieh-Thai Ssu, Peking, 95 (c)
Chin Tzhu, Thai-yuan, 95 (c), 252 (b)
to Chang Hsia, 321
Chen-Kuo Ssu, Phing-yao, 131
to Chêng Ho, Malacca, 494
Chhan-Ling Ssu, 676
Chhung-Hsüeh Ssu, Chi-ning, 142 (e)

- Temples (*cont.*)
- Confucian, 63-4, 127, 130, 166, 297, 327
 - Deir al-Medineh, 179
 - Erh Wang Miao, Kuanhsien, 249, 289, 294, 296
 - Fan-Thien Ssu, Hangchow, 141
 - Fo-Kuang Ssu, 95 (c), 101, 128 (b), 130
 - Fu-Lung Kuan, Kuanhsien, 296
 - Greek, 91 (a), 99 (a)
 - Ho-Tung Ssu, Chungchow, 70 (a)
 - Hsiang-Kuo Ssu, 128 (d)
 - Hsing-Chiao Ssu, 138, 140
 - Hsüan-Miao Kuan, Suchow, 95 (c)
 - Hua-Yen Ssu, Ta-thung, 95 (c), 106
 - Huai-Shêng Ssu, Canton, 662
 - imperial ancestral, 81
 - Japanese, 70, 93 (c), 95 (c), 101, 107, 128 (c), 130 (b)
 - Kan-Lu Ssu, Chenchiang, 142
 - Kōmyōji, 85 (c)
 - Korean, 101, 139 (b)
 - Kuan-Yin temple, Lin-chhing, 360 (e)
 - Kuang-Shêng Ssu, Chao-chhêng, 101 (j)
 - Lou-Kuan-Thai, 139-40, 240 (a)
 - Ming Thang, 80, 121 (d), 122 (a)
 - Nan-Chhan Ssu, Shansi, 96, 128 (b), 130 (b)
 - Palmyra, 169 (c)
 - in Peking, 58, 77
 - Punhoang, 139 (b)
 - Shan-Hua Ssu, 95 (c)
 - Shang period, 121 (d)
 - Taoist, 58, 142 (g)
 - technical terms, 120
 - Temple of Heaven, Peking, 122 (a), 134
 - Thien-Ning Ssu, near Peking, 138 (b)
 - Tu-Lo Ssu, Chi-hsien, 67, 131
 - Tunhuang cave-temples, 46, 56 (c), 88-9, 113, 116, 121, 128 (a), 130, 171 (g), 455, 646
 - Tzhu-Ēn Ssu, Sian, 139
 - Wu-Liang Tien, Suchow, 138 (i)
 - Wu-thai Shan, Shansi, 128 (b)
 - Yen-Yu Temple, Hanoi, 166
 - Yü-Chhüan Ssu, Tangyang, 141
 - Yü Wang Kung, Kuanhsien, 296
 - Yün-kang cave-temples, 101, 138
 - Yung-Kuo Ssu, 197 (c)
 - Yung-Ning Ssu, Loyang, 70 (a)
 - Tenavarai-nāyaṇār (Ceylonese incarnation of Vishnu), 523
 - Tenders (shipping), 467 ff., 472
 - la Tène age, 657
 - Têng Ai (Wei general, c. +260), 573
 - Têng Tsê-Hui (1), 217
 - Têngchow, 526
 - ships from, 416
 - Tenon and mortice work, 95, 98, 389
 - Tensile strength, of cables, 191 (d), 328, 339, 415 (a)
 - Teocalli*, 543
 - Teponatzli* drums, 543
 - Teredo* (molluscan pest attacking hulls of ships), 664
 - Terminology. *See* Technical terms
 - Terra-cotta brick, 40
 - Terra-cotta figures, 543
 - Terra-cotta lamp, 435
 - Terracing, 246-7
 - Terre pisé* (tamped earth), 7, 38-9, 43-4, 122 ff., 256 (d)
 - Terrestrial degree, 560 (a)
 - Terrestrial globe, 559, 584-7
 - Textile workers, 362
 - Textiles, 89, 496
 - Textual Criticism of the Former Han Bibliography. *See* *Han I Wên Chih Khao Chêng*
 - Tey Planas, Capt. José-Maria, 486
 - Tha* (pagoda), 138 (d)
 - Tha-chhêng Kuan (pass), 198
 - Thaejong (Korean King of Chosŏn, r. +1401 to +1418), 685
 - Thai* (platform or tower), 129
 - Thai culture, 122, 297
 - Thai peoples. *See* Tribal peoples
 - Thai-hang Shan (Mts.), 134
 - Thai-Hsing mountain, 251-2
 - Thai Hu (Lake), 174, 272, 309, 679
 - trawlers of, 601
 - Thai-pai (river), 20
 - Thai-pai Shan (Mt.), 19-20, 22
 - Thai Pai Yin Ching* (Manual of the Martial Planet, i.e. Venus), 159, 381, 424, 427, 618, 685, 689, 691, 693
 - Thai-Phing Chhiao, 153 (b)
 - Thai-Phing Reign-Period Imperial Encyclopaedia. *See* *Thai-Phung Yü Lan*
 - Thai-Phing Yü Lan* (Thai-Phing Reign-Period Imperial Encyclopaedia), 679
 - Thai Phu (Grand Keeper of Equipages), 37
 - Thai-Thai (irrigational culture-hero), 252
 - Thai-Thai Tsê (marsh), 252
 - Thai Tsu (Ming emperor, r. +1368 to +1398), 200, 524 (a)
 - tomb of, at Nanking, 77
 - Thaichow, 414
 - Thailand, 189, 309 (f)
 - Thaiphing revolution, 323
 - Thaiwan (Formosa), 60 (f), 187, 528, 550
 - sailing-rafts of, 393-4, 618
 - Thaiwan aborigines, raids by, 393
 - Thaiyuan, 16, 245, 252, 276
 - Thames (river), 339 (a)
 - arrival of Chinese junk in, 485
 - Than Chhiao (Taoist philosopher, c. +940), 641, 650
 - Than chhien* (bowstring, or string of musical instrument), 411 (e)
 - Than-ston-rgyal-po (Tibetan bridge-engineer, c. +1361 to +1485), 206
 - Than Yuan Thi Hu* (A Delicious Dish of Talk), 605
 - Thang (dynasty), 75, 136, 276, 499, 530
 - architecture and building, 66, 68-9, 95, 101, 106-7, 121, 128, 130-1, 139-40
 - bridges, 160-1, 165, 174
 - coins, 498

- Thang (dynasty) (*cont.*)
 Department of Waterways, 346
 fresco paintings. *See* Frescoes
 gardens, 75
 Great Wall, 50
 hydraulic engineering works, 282 ff., 305, 308–9, 339, 352
 irrigation and water-conservancy, 217, 227, 230–1, 268, 271–2
 palaces, 73, 107, 131, 206
 post-station system, 31, 36
 roads, 22, 31–2, 277
 ships, 423, 442, 451, 452 (b), 454, 455 ff., 619 (b), 696–7
 tombs, 140, 143
 town-planning, 73
 trade, 537
 Thang (semi-legendary emperor), 246
 Thang Chung-Yu (engineer, +1180), 161
 Thang Ho (admiral, +1370), 687
 Thang-hsiang, 207
 Thang Huan-Chhêng (1), 150, 163, 181
Thang Kuo Shih Pu (Supplementary Information for the History of the Present (Thang) Dynasty), 222
Thang Liang Ching Chhêng Fang Khao (Studies on the Districts in the Two Thang Capitals), 88
 Thang-lo Tao, 22
 Thang Mêng (ambassador, –135), 24–5
Thang Shu, 561.
 See *Chiu Thang Shu* and *Hsin Thang Shu*
Thang Yü Lin (Miscellanea of the Thang Dynasty), 381, 451, 644
 Thao (river), 54, 252
 Thao Chhien, 138
 Thao Chien (Transport Commissioner and Palace Intendant, c. +1023), 352
 Thao Huang (high official, c. +280), 671 (a)
 Thao Pi (poet, +1017 to +1080), 671
 Thao River Canal, 224 (b)
Thao-thieh, 543
 Thao-Wu (legendary rebel), 250
Le Théâtre de l'Art de Carpentier, 85 (b)
Theatrum Machinarum Generale, 332 (e)
 Thêng (State), 260
 Thêng, Duke of (c. –300), 256
 Theodolite, 262–3, 331 (f), 332
 Thermopolium, Ostia, 179
 Thessalonica, siege of, 609 (e)
Thi chhiao ('ladder bridges', pavilions built out on corbel-bracket cantilevers), 166
Thi thien ('laddered fields'). *See* Terracing
 Thieh-chhiao Chhêng (Iron-bridge Town), 198
Thieh Chhiao Chih Shu (Record of the Iron Suspension Bridge), 203–4
Thieh Chi Phu (Discourse on Butterfly Tables), 136
Thieh chuang (iron (-shod) striking-arms), 575
 Thieh-lê (Tölös). *See* Tribal peoples
Thieh Wei Shan Tshung Than (Collected Conversations at Iron-Fence Mountain), 672
 Thien-Chin Chhiao, 172, 174
 Thien-Fei (Buddhist-Taoist goddess of the sea), 523, 582
 Thien Fên, marquis of Wu-An (*fl.* –132), 232
 Thien Ju-Khang (1, 2), 484
 Thien Jung (general, +33), 679
Thien Kung Khai Wu (Exploitation of the Works of Nature), 347–8, 382, 409–10, 427, 634, 668–9, 673
 Thien-Ning Ssu (temple), 138
 Thien-Shan (mountain range), 56, 151
 Thien-Shan Nan Lu. *See* Road South of the Celestial Mountains
 Thien-Shan Pei Lu. *See* Road North of the Celestial Mountains
 Thien-shui, 17, 74
Thien Wên ode, 250
Thien Wên Lûeh (Explicatio Sphaeris Caelestis), 578
 Thien Yuan algebraic methods, 325
Thing. *See* Cantonal offices
Thing tzu (small boat), 380 (b)
 Things Seen and Heard by an Official at Court. *See* *Wên Chhang Tsa Lu*
 Things Silently Recorded. *See* *Mo Chi*
 'Thirteen Tombs' (Ming imperial tombs and temples), 143
Tho (steering-oar; later, the axial stern-post rudder), 638 ff., 644 ff.
Tho (cylinders of plaited bamboo), 385
 Tho Hsia Chhi (Stream of the Downcoming Tho), 641
Tho lou ('rudder-house'), 448, 634 (g), 643–4, 648, 650
 Tho-lung-tzu (river-junk), 399
 Tho-phan-ti, 475
 Thole-pin, 622–3
 Thomson, J. (1), 424
 Thopa Hung (Northern Wei emperor, r. +465 to +471), 138
 Thopa Wei people, 42
 Thorn-apple, 531 (c)
 Thouless, R. H. (1), 117; (2), 118; (3), 118–19
 'Three Gates.' *See* San Mên gorge
 The Three-Jewel Commissioner. *See* Chêng Ho
 The 'Three-Jewel Eunuch', 487 (d)
 Three Kingdoms (period). *See* San Kuo (period)
Thu (maps and charts, or drawings and paintings), 112
 Thu Chü (commander, –219), 441
Thu Hua Chien Wên Chih (Observations on Drawing and Painting), 107 (a)
 Thu-ku-hun people. *See* Tribal peoples
Thu Shu Chi Chhêng (the Great Encyclopedia), 341, 395, 427, 432–3, 484, 539, 578, 685
 Thu Ssu-Khung (Superintendent-General of Convict Labour), 30
 Thu-wei. *See* 'Stomach-strikers'
Thu yang. *See* Shipwrights' draughts
 Thu-yü-hun tribes, 50
 Thucydides, 693 (c)
 Thun-shih (river), 329

INDEX

897

- Thung-chhê-pa (Passing-place for Carts), 20
 Thung Chi Chhü, 307, 451
Thung Chih Lüeh bibliography, 324
 Thung Hui Ho (Channel of Communicating Grace), 3, 12–13, 318, 355
Thung Hui Ho Chih (Record of the Canal of Communicating Grace), 313
 Thung-kuan, 16, 220, 273–4, 278, 280
Thung Tien (Comprehensive Institutes), 424, 427
 Thung-Wan, 42
 Thungchow, 312–13, 318
 Ti tribe. *See* Tribal peoples
 Ti Chhiang tribal people. *See* Tribal peoples
 Ti-chu, 21, 273 ff., 277
 Ti-hua, 18
 Tiberius (Roman emperor, *r.* +14 to +37), 20–1, 23, 519 (c)
 Tibet, 116, 206, 218, 220, 386, 394
 boats, 386
 bridges, 162 ff., 185 ff., 189, 197 ff., 206–7
 buildings, 70 (d), 134
 embassy to, 491
 roads, 23, 33
 tribes, 50
 Tibetan chronicle, 206–7
 Ticino (river), 377
 Tidal bore, 320
 Tide sluices. *See* Sluice-gates
 Tide-tables, 584
 Tides, 582–3
 and manipulation of megaliths, 153 (c)
 and navigation, 558
 Tie-beams, 92
 Tien (State, and city, Kunming), 16
 engraved bronze representations of war-boats from, 447, 450
 seal of the King of, 447 (b)
 Tientsin, 271, 276, 310, 313–14, 318, 478
 Tigris (R.), 334, 361, 365–6
 Tilers, 130 (b)
 Tiles, 42, 65, 90, 134
 Tiller, 398–9, 401, 627, 632–3, 636–7, 644
 mechanical assistance applied to, 635
 relieving-tackle for, 651
 Timber, 244
 used in buildings, 65, 67, 85, 90 ff., 122
 conservation of, 664
 imitations of, 90, 126
 used for rudders, 416, 644–6
 for ship-building, 411, 414
 used in walls, 51
 Timberwork Manual. *See* *Mu Ching*
 Time, difference between local and Chinese, 587
 Time-measurement
 by burning ‘joss-sticks’, 570
 by hour-glass or sand-glass, 556, 569–70
 instruments, 267 (c), 559
 by observation of the stars, 554–5, 583
 Timetables (in post-station system), 36
 Timor, 507, 524, 536–7, 582
 Timür Lang (+1335 to +1405, King of Transoxiana), 488
 Tin, as means of exchange, 519
 Ting (Chou High King, *r.* –606 to –586), 271
 Ting Chin-Kung (official and sea-wall engineer), 321
Ting-Hai Thing Chih (Local Gazetteer of the Sub-Prefecture of Ting-hai), 576 ff., 581
 Ting Pao-Chên (Governor of Szechuan, 1876 to 1886), 295 (g), 296 (c)
 Ting Wên-Chiang (geologist, 1887 to 1936), 409 (f)
 Ting Wên-Chiang & Donnelly, I. A., 604
 Tissa-wewa, 370
 To. *See* *Tho* (steering-oar; later, the axial stern-post rudder)
 Tobacco, 533
 Tōdaiji temple, Nara, 101 (j), 107, 130 (b)
Tōdaiji Zōritsu Kuyōki (A Record of the Rebuilding of the Tōdaiji Temple at Nara), 130 (b)
 Todd, O. J. (1), 341
 Todd, O. J. & Eliassen, S. (1), 237, 341
 Togan, Zaki Validi (2), 56
 Tōkaidō, 36 (d)
 Toledan Tables, 581
 Tomb-furniture, 133
 Tomb models. *See* Models
 Tombs, 40, 58, 65, 90, 126, 140, 143
 near Chêngchow, 112 (f)
 Chhin, 167
 of Chhing emperors, 143
 at Dôngsón, 443
 Etruscan, 474 (c)
 Han, 40, 114, 134, 167, 174, 447–8
 Hsiao-thang Shan, 126–7, 444
 I-Nan, 140 (a)
 of Kao I, at Ya-an, 126
 Korean, 101
 of Liu Yen, 180
 Ming, 77, 143–4
 Thang, 140
 Tien State, 447
 of Wan-Li emperor, 144 (a)
 Warring States, 40
 of Wu Liang, 127, 149, 444
 at Ying-chhêng-tzu, 180
 of Yung-Lo emperor, 77 (c), 143 (d), 144
 Tonga, sails of, 606
 Tongking, 671
 boats of, 384–5, 461
 expedition to, 442
Tongkung (Malayan ship type), 439
 Tongs-and-Furnaces Dam, 281
 Tongue-and-groove seams, 389 (g)
 Tonnages
 of ships, 304, 359, 412, 415 (a), 441, 452 ff., 466 ff., 468, 481, 509, 600, 628, 641, 645, 653
 of transport-grain, etc., 310, 352–3, 412, 441, 451, 478 ff.
 Tools, of shipwrights, 412 (i), 450
 Tooth Relic (Buddhist), 523
 Top-sails. *See* Sails
 Tōpa-wewa, 371

898

Topping lifts, 595–6, 647–8
Toraṇa (Indian gateway), 69, 142 (h)
 Torr, C. (1), 405
 Torres Strait, 586 (i)
 Torricelli, Evangelista (+ 1644), 231 (d)
 Tosa-ryū school of painters, 647
 Tōshōdaiji (temple), Kondō at, 130 (d)
 Toso Yukihide (+ 14th-century Japanese painter), 438 (g)
 Tou (peck or quart), 25, 228, 230, 285
 Tou hsien (Combat-Junks), 424, 449
 Tou kung. *See* Corbel brackets
 Tou mên (sluice-gates), 231, 349
 Tou-Mên Chhang (officials in charge of sluice-gates), 268
 Tou Yen (scholar, fl. +956), 80
 Tournai artisans, 637
 Tower-building, 128–9, 139
 Tower of Belem, 486
 ‘Tower-Ships.’ *See* *Lou Chhuan*
 Towers and Halls of the Mountain of the Immortals. *See* Hsien Shan Lou Ko Thu
 Towing, of ships, 191, 305, 339, 415, 466 ff., 626, 662–4
 Town-planning, 71 ff., 87, 89
 rectangular manner, 72
 technical terms, 72 (d)
 Towns, 88
 descriptions of, 86
 population, 71, 74
 size, 73 (b)
 social and economic aspects, 71
 Toxic smokes, 684, 692
 Trabaccolo (lugger), 613–14
 Trackers’ cloth-band harness, 663
 Trackers’ galleries, 23, 277, 662
 Tracking, of ships. *See* Towing
 Tractatus de Globis, 585
 Trade, 14, 18, 24, 31, 73 (c), 394, 416, 476
 adverse balance of, 518 ff.
 foreign. *See* Foreign trade
 Trade Commissioner. *See* Shih Po Shih
 Trade-winds. *See* Winds
 Traditions of Past Affairs. *See* *Chhien Wên Chi*
 Trajan (Roman emperor, r. +98 to +117), 20–1, 23, 28–9, 47 (d), 166, 465 (i)
 galley of, 664
 Trần Ung-Long (nautical inventor, fl. +968), 385 (b)
 Transcendence, and Gothic architecture, 61 (b)
 Transmission of inventions and techniques, 374 (b), 544 (e), 637, 695–9
 cross-staff, 574
 hydraulic techniques, 361–2
 leeboards, 619
 navigational techniques, 567
 qanāt, 335
 sails, 612 (a), 615 ff.
 sand-glass, 570
 segmental arch, 184
 shipping, 380, 389 (e), 421–2, 435 ff., 548 (b)
 stern-post rudder, 637–8, 651–4, 655

INDEX

Transport, 212, 251, 261, 266
 commandeering of, 161 (d)
 of grain. *See* Grain transport
 inland water, 216, 226, 312, 373–4, 410, 441
 land and water, coordination between, 21
 misuse of, 37
 of monoliths, 90
 public, 37
 road, 278
 sea, 312 ff., 360, 410, 412, 442, 478–9, 526–7
 sea v. canal controversy, 478–9, 484, 526
 Transverse partitions
 in Chinese architecture, 391
 in Chinese shipbuilding. *See* Bulkheads
 Travels of Lao-Tshan. *See* *Lao-Tshan Yu Chi*
 Traverse tables, 556, 569
 Treadmills, 338
 Treasure-ship Yards, 480
 Treasure-ships, 452 (b), 480–1, 483–4, 499, 510, 524
 size of, 509
 withdrawal of, 503, 525–6
 Treatise on Agriculture. *See* *Nung Shu*
 Treatise on Architectural Methods. *See* *Ying Tsao Fa Shih*
 Treatise on Armament Technology. *See* *Wu Pei Chih*
 A Treatise on River Control. *See* *Chih Ho Shu*
 Treatise on Water Conservancy. *See* *Shui Li Shu*
 Trebuchets, 203, 361, 425, 442 (i), 476, 516 (b), 576, 667, 685, 688, 693, 695–6
 Trend, J. B., 652–3
 Trepang, 537–8
 Très Belles Heures de Notre Dame, 610 (k)
 Trestles, 151
 Trezzo, bridge at, 175, 181
 Tribal peoples
 Abor, 186
 Ai-Lao, 197 (a), 201, 390
 Ainu, 541
 Ama, 668 (a)
 Chao-hsien, 25
 Chhi-tan Liao, 161, 453, 227
 Chhiang, 19 (a), 22, 38, 390 (i)
 Chin (Jurchen) Tartars, 87, 105, 161, 165, 227, 266, 311, 312 (g), 463, 477, 600 (e)
 Hakka, 133
 Hsia, 42
 Huns, 14, 17, 30 (d), 42, 55, 227, 272, 280
 I peoples, 25, 42, 187
 Jung, 52
 Kirghiz, 14 (a)
 Koryaks, 121 (c)
 Liu-kuei (Turkic nomads), 14 (a)
 Lou-lan, 18
 Lu-to, 390
 Man, 199, 690
 Maoris, 544 (j)
 Miao, 123 (a), 390
 Mu-ma Thu-chüeh (‘Wooden-Horse Turks’), 14 (a)
 Nagas, 186

- Tribal peoples (*cont.*)
 Nakhī, 198
 Nung (Upper Burma), 185 (g), 190
 Pa-hsi mi, 14 (a)
 Shih-wei (branch of the Chhi-tan), 14 (a)
 Tan, 668, 672, 690 (e)
 Thai, 254
 Thieh-lê (Tölös), Turkic nomads, 14 (a)
 Thopa Wei, 42
 Thu-ku-hun (a Hsien-pi tribe), 165
 Thu-yü-hun, 50
 Ti, 52
 Ti Chhiang, 289 (d)
 Turkic peoples, 14 (a), 55, 227
 Uighurs, 14 (a)
 Wei-mo, 25
 Yüeh, 280, 299, 303, 441, 443-4, 618 (i)
See also Cultures
- Tribute, 442-3, 488-9, 494, 525, 529
See also Tax-grain
- Tribute of Yü, chapter of the *Shu Ching*, q.v.
- Trigault, Nicholas (Jesuit missionary, +1577 to +1628), 135 (d)
- Trigonometry, 556, 584 (d)
- Trimetrical Classic of River Control. *See* Chih Ho San Tzu Ching
- Trimetrical Primer. *See* San Tzu Ching
- Santa Trinità Bridge, Florence, 175, 181
- Trip-hammers, 311 (b), 336
- Tripod pottery, 543
- Trireme, 437 (c), 442
- Tristão, Nuno (Portuguese explorer, +1444), 505
- Triumphal arches. *See* Phai-lou
- Triumphant Visions of the Ocean Shores. *See* Ying Yai Shêng Lan
- Triumphant Visions of the Starry Raft. *See* Hsing Chha Shêng Lan
- Trusses, 65, 101-2, 141, 145-6
 anti-hogging, 395, 437, 698
- Tsaidam Basin, 33
- Tsang Hung (Sung bridge-builder), 151
- Tsang-kho (river), 24
- Tsao Chuan Thu Shuo* (Illustrated Account of Brick- and Tile-Making), 42
- Tsao Fa Pai Ti Chhêng (Leaving Pai-ti City at Dawn), 222 (a)
- Tsé Chün-Lien (Chhing writer on sea-walls), 323
- Tsé-Yü (inspectors of lakes and fisheries), 267
- Tséng Kung-Liang (military and naval encyclopaedist, +1044), 381, 424
- Tséng shih* (arrows), 187
- Tshai (State), 269-70
- Tshai* (module), 68
- Tshai Hsiang (high official, scholar, naturalist and engineer, +1012 to +1067), 153-4
- Tshai-shih, Battle of, 416 (b)
- Tshai Thao (writer, c. +1115), 672
- Tshan Luan Lu* (Guiding the reins—a narrative of a three months' journey from the capital to Kueilin in +1172), 247, 303 (d)
- Tshang-hai, 25
- Tshang-wu, 27
- Tshao (State), 269-70
- Tshao Chhü (Grain Traffic Waterway), 273
- Tshao Chhuan Chih* (Records of River and Canal Shipping), 482
- Tshao Chih (+192 to +232, Prince of the Wei, Taoist writer, poet and naturalist), 649
- Tshao fang*. *See* Grain transport ships
- Tshao Tshao (+155 to +220, founder of the Wei State in the Three Kingdoms period), 81, 281, 449
- Tshao Yün Fu Khu Tshang Yü* (Tax-Grain Water Transport and Granaries), 325
- Tshao Yün Ssu (Directorate of Grain Transport), 312 (c)
- Tshen Phêng (general, c. +33), 621, 680
- Tshêng-Pa, 495
- Tshêng-Yao-Lo (al-Zanj), 495
- Tshui Hsüan-Liang (Sung writer on naval medicine), 491 (h)
- Tshui Shao-Yü (artist, c. +491), 105
- Tshui Yen-Po (general, c. +494), 190-1
- Tshui Yuan (+3rd-century hydraulic engineer), 289 (a)
- Tso (bridge-cables), 187, 191
- Tso Chuan* (Master Tsochhiu's Enlargement of the *Chhun Chhiu*), 129, 252 (b), 253, 260, 440
- Tso Ssu (poet, c. +270), 86
- Tsou-hsien, 327
- Tsou Hsing (general, +1370), 687-8
- Tsou ko* ('Flying Barques'), 425, 449, 686
- Tsou Yen (Naturalist philosopher, c. -290), 585
- Tsu-Yin (monk and bridge-builder), 173
- Tsu Yüeh (general, fl. +494), 190
- Tsuan fêng chhuan* ('boring-into-the-wind ship'), 416, 621
- Tsung* (ancestral), 120
- Tsung-Hêng Chia (School of Political Philosophers), 266 (i)
- Tsung-I (monk, fl. +1053), 153 (f)
- Tsung-Shan (monk, fl. +1059), 153 (f)
- Tsungarian plain, 18
- Tu (capital), 74
- Tu Chhêng Chi Shêng* (The Wonder of the Capital), 87
- Tu Chhi (hydraulic engineer, fl. +1046), 321, 322
- Tu Chhin (high official, fl. -25), 188, 330-1
- Tu-Chiang Yen (Dam on the Capital's River), 289 ff.
- Tu Fu (Thang poet), 172 (a), 222 (a), 247
- Tu Huan (Thang military officer, +763), 495 (c)
- Tu Kuang-Thang (Sung writer), 187
- Tu-Lo Ssu (Joy-in-Solitude Temple). *See* Temples
- Tu Mao (military engineer, fl. +27), 25
- Tu-Shan Hu (lake), 327
- Tu Shih (Prefect of Nanyang and patron of engineers, fl. +31), 281
- Tu-Shui (Director of Water Conservancy), 267
- Tu-tsao River valley, 331 (f)
- Tu Yen-Chün (engineer, fl. +994), 344
- Tu Yu (Superintendent of Posts), 37
- Tu Yü (engineer, fl. +270), 160-1

900

Tu Yu (financial official and historian, *fl.* +781), 307 (i), 424
 Tu-Yuan kingdom, 443
 Tuamotu archipelago, 547
 Tuan Chhêng-Shih (scholar, *c.* +860), 494
 Tuan Hsing-Chih (Governor-General of Nan Chao, Yunnan, *fl.* +1253), 198
 Tuan Kuo (writer, +4th or +5th century), 165
 Tuan Ning (Later Thang general), 266
 Tuan Yang Ching Tu Thu (Sailing Races at the Fifth Month Festival), 106
 Tui chhuan ('pairers'). *See* Chusan, fishing-boats of
 Tumuli, 143-4
 Tung (caves or cave-shaped dwellings), 133 (d)
 Tung-a, 282, 314
 Tung Chhi-Chhang (artist, +1555 to +1636), 111
 Tung-chhuan, 185
 Tung-Chiao (district of Canton), ship model from, 448
Tung Ching Fu (Ode on the Eastern Capital), 86
Tung Ching Mêng Hua Lu (Dreams of the Glories of the Eastern Capital), 87
 Tung Hsi (naval commander, +208), 680
Tung Hsi Yang Khao (Studies on the Oceans East and West), 382, 581-2
Tung Hsien Pi Lu (Jottings from the Eastern Side-Hall), 311 (b)
 Tung Hsün (writer, 1867), 326
 Tung-Kuo Ho (R.), 276
 Tung-Mei Chhiao, 171
Tung Ming Chi (Light on Mysterious Things), 623, 678 (b)
 Tung-oil, 468, 664
 Tung-phing, 316
 Tung-phing Lake, 238-9
Tung-Pho Chih Lin (Journal and Miscellany of (Su) Tung-Pho), 230
 Tung-thing Lake, 8, 27, 222, 299, 300, 306, 692
Tung thu ('interfering with the earth'), 53 (d)
Tung Tu Fu (Ode on the Eastern Capital), 86, 162
 Tung Yüeh (Ming scholar), 53
 Tungabhadra Dam, 368
 Tungchün, 234
 Tungkuan (district of Lanchow), 74
 Tungusic culture, 122
 Tunhuang, 17-18, 49, 130, 165, 171 (g), 206
 cave-temples. *See* Temples
 fresco paintings. *See* Frescoes
 silk banner painting from, 116 (c)
 Tunis, 684
 Tunisia, 367
 Tunnel-engineering, 334-5
 in Ceylon, 372
 Turk-sib railway, 18
 Turkestan, 481
 Turkic peoples. *See* Tribal peoples
 Turkish boats, 472 (d), 614-15
 Turks, 505, 514
 Turnips, 520 (e)
 Turret-built ships, 397, 411 (n)

INDEX

'Turtle ships' (Kuei chhuan), 683 ff., 687-8
Twaqo (Singapore ship type), 439
 'Two Fishes' gauge rock, 333
 'Two-Master' ship, 406
 Two-phase components, 38 (d)
 Tympanum, 579
 Typhoons, 571 (h)
 Tzhu-Ën Ssu (Loving-Kindness Temple), 139
Tzhu Shih Chi Hsieh Fu (Ode to Cure quickly the Evils of the Age), 639
 Tzu (river), 270
 Tzu-Chhan. *See* Kungsun Chhiao
 Tzu-ching-kuan (fortress), 48
Tzu-ching-mu (purple thorn tree), 645
 Tzu-kuei, 26
 Tzu-liu-ching. *See* Tzuliuching
 Tzu-thung, bridge at, 171, 173 (b)
 Tzu-wu (river), 22
 Tzu-wu Tao. *See* North-South Road
 Tzuliuching, 422, 430-1
 brine borehole workings at, 659
 Uccelli, A., 166, 175, 181
 Udyāna, 197-8
 Uighurs, 14 (a)
Ulakh (Ganges ship type), 655
 Ulan-Bator, 48
 Ulūgh Beg (astronomer, +1393 to +1449; Timūrid Shāh, *r.* +1447 to 1449), 503 (c)
 Uma Oya (R.), 372
 'Umar I (Caliph, *r.* +634 to +644), 465 (i)
 'Umar II (Caliph, *r.* +717 to +720), 465 (i)
 'Under-the-waves boats' (*lun po chou*), 674 (a)
 Underground cables, 104 (c)
 Underground pipe-lines, 334
 Underwood, H. H. (1), 642, 683
 Unequal night-watches. *See* Night-watches
 Unemployment, 323 (b)
 Unit-repetition, in architecture, 66 ff., 139
 Universal joint, 622, 624
 Unofficial Biography of Sun Fang. *See* *Sun Fang Pieh Chuan*
 United Nations Relief and Reconstruction Administration, 266
 Universal Encyclopaedia. *See* *San Tshai Thu Hui*
 Upatissa II (King of Ceylon, +368), 371
 Upperwork Unit, 82 ff.
 Urals, 56
 Urga, 48
 Ursa minor, 571
 de Ursis, Sabbatino (Jesuit missionary, Hsiung San-Pa, +1611), 579, 581
 'Using the winds of the three directions', 462
 Utrecht, 357, 364
 Uttar Pradesh, Sone Bridge in, 158
 Vacuum distillation, 421 (b)
 Valencia, Tribunal de las Aguas, 267 (d)
 Vallum Antonii Pii, 47 (c)
 Valve-towers. *See* *Bisi-kottuwa*
 Vangs, 598, 615
 Vargord (spar), 615 (c)

INDEX

901

- Variarum Observationum Liber*, 418
 'Vasa' (Swedish warship), 667 (b)
 Vault, 65, 167
 barrel-, 133, 139, 167
 corbelled, 139, 167 (e)
 Vega, 583
 Vegetius, 673
 Vehicles, 6 (d)
 Velho, Frei Gonçalo (Portuguese explorer, +1426), 505
 Venice, 175, 181, 505 (e), 519, 613
 gondolas, 621
 ships, 452 (b)
 Venetian glass industry, 570
 Verantius, Faustus (+1585), 207-8
 Verbiest, Ferdinand (Jesuit astronomer, Nan Huai-Jen, +1672), 427, 510, 513
 Verdalis, N. (1, 2), 364
 Verified Stellar Prognostications of the Sea People. See *Hai Chung Hsing Chan Yen*
 Veritable Records of the Ming Dynasty. See *Ming Shih Lu*
 'Vermicular' (articulated boat), 421
 Vermuyden, Sir Cornelius, 249 (b), 264 (b)
 Vernier graduations, 559
 Verona, 175, 181
 Versailles, 77
 Vertical and Horizontal Axes (*tsung hêng*), 266
 Vertical and horizontal mountings, 658 (d)
 Vespasian (Roman emperor, r. +69 to +79), 47 (a)
 Via Appia. See Appian Way
 Vieira, Cristovão (traveller, +1524), 423 (a), 534 (b)
 Vierlingh, Andries (+1579), 339 (g)
 View-point, in painting, 114 ff.
 Vijayanagar dynasty, 367
 Viking longships, 388-9, 440 (d), 446, 450, 472, 606-7, 636, 653
 Villages, 71, 133
 fortified, 70
 neolithic, 121
 Vinaya Canon, 458
 Vinegar, used in fire-setting, 26 (d), 278
 Visigoths, 503
 Visconti Bridge, Trezzo, 181
 Vissière, A. (2), 297
 Vitruvius (engineer, -30), 40 (g), 135, 152, 256, 338, 559 (l), 579
 Volta (river), 511
 Volta da Guiné, 513
 Volta do Brasil, 513
 Vossius, Isaac, 417-18, 666
 Voyages and expeditions, 652-3
 to Africa, 637
 Chinese, 474, 486 ff., 505, 525-6, 564; governmental character of, 517; 533; motives for, 529-30, 532; pacific character of, 490-1, 507, 514-15, 533, 584
 Portuguese, 479, 487, 493, 503 ff., 567; motives for, 504, 507, 514-15, 529-30, 533-4
 to America and the Pacific, 549 ff.
 to Australia and the Southern Seas, 536 ff.
 Bengal to Malé, 567
 Ceylon to Sumatra, 565 ff.
 Voyages and Traffics... in the Western Ocean. See *Hsi-Yang Chi*
 Vreeswijk, pound lock at, 357
 Waddell, L. A. (1), 206
 Wagons, 30
 Wahalkada-wewa, 371
 Wai-phi-ku. See Boats, crooked-stern
 Waist-boats (*yao chow*), 387
Wakan Senyōshū (Collected Studies on the Ships used by the Japanese and Chinese), 381 (d), 402 (f), 437 (e)
 Walawe Ganga catchment, 370-1
 Wall-towers, 47
 Wallinga, H. T. (1), 693
 Walls, 1-2, 38-56, 65, 90
 city-, 42 ff., 74, 256 (b)
 curtain, 65
 end-, 102
 non-weight-bearing, 65, 103-4
 pisé, 7, 38-9, 43
 with plinth, 46
 Romano-British, 54-5, 170 (a)
 sea-, 154, 320 ff., 341
 technical terms, 38 ff., 42
 See also Great Wall
 Wan. See Nan-yang
 Wan-An Bridge. See Loyang Bridge
 Wan Chen (traveller and writer on foreign countries, +3rd century), 472 (h), 600, 602, 671
Wan Chi Lun (The Myriad Stratagems), 679
 Wan-hsien, arch bridge at, 171
 Wan Kung (+16th-century engineer), 344
 the Wan-Li emperor, tomb of, 144 (a)
 Wan-Li Chhiao, 171-2
 Wan-Nien Chhiao (Nanchhêng), 173
Wan-Nien Chhiao Chih (Record of the Bridge of Ten Thousand Years), 173, 177
 Wan Ssu-Thung (scholar, +1685), 81 (b)
 Wando Island, 454
 Wang An-Shih (reforming scholar and prime minister, +1021 to +1086), 311 (b), 336, 363, 640
 Wang Chên (encyclopaedist of agriculture and engineering, +1313), 225
 Wang Chen-Phêng (painter, fl. +1312), 206, 436 (c), 647
 Wang Chen-To (5), 569
 Wang Chhêng (royal city citadel), 6, 81
 Wang Chhêng-Fu (mason), 85 (a)
 Wang Chhêng-Tê (civil engineer, +1310), 287
 Wang Chhi (late +16th-century encyclopaedist), 423, 425-6
 Wang Chhin-Thieh (Taoist hermit, fl. +1503), 208
 Wang Chhung (+1st-century sceptical philosopher), 677
 Wang Chi-Ong (adviser to the Yuan government), 311 (c), 312 (e)

902

- Wang Chia (late +3rd-century writer), 665, 674 (a)
- Wang Chih (+11th-century writer), 82 (a)
- Wang Chih (eunuch, c. +1477), 525
- Wang Chih-Chhêng. *See* Attiret, Jean-Denis
- Wang Ching (hydraulic engineer, d. +83), 229, 235 (h), 270, 281, 346, 361, 562
- Wang Ching-Hung (naval commander, +1405), 487, 490-1, 507
- Wang Chou (poet, c. +1510), 630 (b)
- Wang Chün (admiral, fl. +280), 307, 685, 694
- Wang Chung (Taoist astronomer, c. -180), 562
- Wang Fan (+3rd-century mathematician and astronomer), 586
- Wang Fêng (general, c. -28), 330-1
- Wang Hêng (engineer, c. -1), 229 (a)
- Wang Hêng (+15th-century Brigadier of Marines), 491
- Wang Ho-Ming (writer on ships, late +16th century), 423, 681
- Wang Hsi (+14th-century writer), 325
- Wang Hsien (Ming geomancer), 144 (c)
- Wang Hsing-Tsê (naval commander, fl. +665), 141 (d)
- Wang Huai (engineer, c. +1488), 201-2
- Wang Huai-Yü (+16th-century garden-designer), 75 (d)
- Wang Hung (Later Han civil engineer), 22
- Wang I-Chhi (hydraulic engineer, +1540), 315 (f)
- Wang Ku-Yün (Ming painter), 106
- Wang Kuan-Chih (official, +1020), 362
- Wang Kung (+12th-century writer), 333
- Wang Kung Chung Chhin Lu* (Record of the Venerable Wang Chung-Chhin), 244
- Wang Liang (hydraulic engineer, fl. +29), 276
- Wang Ling-Chün (hydraulic engineer, fl. +1203), 349 (b)
- Wang Mang (Hsin emperor, r. +9 to +23), 22, 228, 241, 442, 444
- Wang Nien-Sun (philological scholar, +1796), 680
- Wang Pên (commander, -225), 270 (c)
- Wang Phi-Chih (+11th-century writer), 164-5
- Wang Shih (bridge-builder, fl. +1053), 153 (f)
- Wang Shuang (Wei general, +222), 449 (c)
- Wang Ta-Yuan (traveller, fl. +1330), 495, 497, 536
- Wang Tang (Thang writer), 451, 453, 465
- Wang tou* (sighting-tube). *See* Sighting-tube
- Wang Tsu-Tao (prefect, fl. +1078), 153 (f)
- Wang Tzu (local official, fl. +1582), 142 (e)
- Wang Wei (Thang painter), 392 (a)
- Wang Wên-Khao (writer, c. +140), 86
- Wang Wu (hydraulic engineer, fl. +70), 281
- Wang-Wu (mountain), 251-2
- Wang Yeh (priest and boat-builder, Thang or earlier), 435 (g)
- Wang Yen-Shih (Comptroller of Water-Conservancy Works, c. -28), 330-1, 339
- Wang Ying-Lin (+13th-century encyclopaedist), 295, 325, 561

INDEX

- War-junks. *See* Junks
- Ward, Kingdon (3), 386
- Warehouses (*tha fang*), 69 (b), 90 (c)
- Warring States (period), 217, 258 ff., 562
- building, 40, 45, 88, 105, 125
- Great Wall in, 53
- hydraulic engineering, 235, 265, 304, 375
- roads, 5, 8
- tomb ship models, 650
- maritime trade, 441, 443
- ships and boats, 379, 441, 444-5, 450, 681
- Warships, 266, 299, 381, 408 (a), 416 (b), 423 ff., 427, 432-3, 440 ff., 445 ff., 450, 460, 476, 484, 572, 655, 678, 683
- in Japanese scroll-paintings, 647-8
- Western, 513
- Watch-towers, 46-7
- Watches (nautical), 564, 570, 583
- Watches (time-pieces), 556 (b)
- Water
- distribution and control of, 267-8
- drinking-. *See* Drinking-water
- female receptiveness of, 249
- shortage and wastage of, 350 (c), 352, 363
- as a weapon, 265-6
- Water ballast, 422
- 'Water boxes' (*shui kuei*), 315-16
- Water-conservancy. *See* Irrigation and conservation works
- Water-Conservancy Memorials to the Throne. *See* *Fang Ho Tsou I*
- Water Conservancy Offices, 223
- Water-Conservancy of the Wu District. *See* *Wu Chung Shui Li Shu*
- 'Water-eye' (*shui yen*). *See* Anchors, 'stick-in-the-mud'
- Water-gates, 345, 683 (a)
- technical terms, 349
- Water-gods, 436 (e)
- Water level gauges, 294
- Water-levels, 331-2
- Water-mills, 216, 336, 346
- Water-raising installations, 276, 350 (c)
- Water-rights, 266-7, 281
- Water-supply, 215
- Water-tank experiments, 419
- Water-tight compartments, 420-2, 630, 653, 695, 698
- with a free-flooding portion, 422, 695
- See also* Bulkheads
- Water-transport. *See* Transport
- Water-wheels, 281, 296, 666
- Watermen, 160
- Waters, D. W., 383; (3), 439; (4), 439; (5), 633; (11), 570
- Waterways Classic. *See* *Shui Ching*
- al-Wâthiq (Caliph, r. +842 to +847), 56 (h)
- The Wave-Subduing Commander. *See* Lu Po-Tê and Ma Yuan
- Wearing about, 590 (a), 593-4, 603
- Weather prediction, 452, 491 (g), 555, 559, 562, 582

INDEX

903

- Weathervane, 603
 'Weathervane pennants', 407
 Weaving, 296
 Wei (Prince of Chhi, *r.* -378 to -343), 551
Wei (Taoist term, 'forcing things'), 249
Wei (bamboo raft), 396
 Wei (dynasty), 50
 Wei (State), 49, 54, 86, 265, 269 ff.
 Wei (river), 15, 19 ff., 160, 273 ff., 287, 310, 313, 319, 478
 bridges, 150, 174
 Wei Valley, 4, 15 ff., 19, 24, 226-7, 261, 335
 Wei Chien (engineer, *fl.* +741), 273 (c)
 Wei Ching (writer on land drainage, *c.* +1200), 284 (b)
 Wei Hsien (painter, Wu Tai period), 106
 Wei Hsien (writer on water conservancy, +1242), 324
 Wei Kao (Thang general), 200
 Wei Khuang-Kuo. *See* Martini, Martin
 Wei-li, 18
 Wei-Lü (Kurushio Current), 548 ff.
Wei-lü (technical term in Taoist anatomy), 549 (b)
 Wei-mo tribe. *See* Tribal peoples
 Wei Pei irrigation area, 286-7
 Wei Shu (+8th-century writer), 88
Wei Shu (History of the (Northern) Wei Dynasty), 190
 Wei Su (Yuan writer), 478
 Wei Thai (late +11th-century writer), 311 (b)
 Wei Tshao (Commandant's Department), 37
 Wei Yang Kung (palace), 45 (c)
 Wei Yen (Minister of War, -547), 259
 Weirs, 215, 230, 281, 322, 341, 346, 367
 in Ceylon, 368, 372
 oblique, 372
 Well-deck, 448
 Well-field system, 73 (a), 81 (a), 256 ff., 259
 Well-smack, 422
 Wells, 258, 333 ff.
 Wells, W. H., 112, 116
 Wên (Duke of Wei State, *r.* -403 to -387), 271
 Wên (river), 282, 313, 315
 Wên Chêng-Ming (scholar and painter, *fl.* +1533), 75 (d)
 Wên-Chhang Chhiao (at Fu-chou), 173 (c)
Wên Chhang Tsa Lu ('Things Seen and Heard by an Official at Court'), 675
Wên Chien Chin Lu (New Records of Things Heard and Seen), 333
Wên Fu (Ode on the Art of Letters), 268-9
Wên Hsüan (General Anthology of Prose and Verse), 86
 Wên-shang, 316
 Wên Ti (Han emperor, *r.* -179 to -157), 7
 Wên Ti (King of the Wei State in the Three Kingdoms period, *r.* +220 to +226), 104
 Wên Wang (founder of the Chou dynasty, -11th century), 129, 162
 Wênchow, 414
 Wênjen Shih (official, +384), 363
 West River (Hsi Chiang), 8, 24-5, 27, 222, 299, 300, 306, 351
 West Africa. *See* Africa, West
 West Indies, 474
 sails, 616
 West Liao State, 698
 Western aggression, in Africa, 514
 Western (or Early) Chou period, 4
 Western misconceptions of Chinese technology, 427, 429
 Western paradise of Amida Buddha, 89
 Western Yen (dynasty), 48
 Wet-well, 422
 'Whangho' (Chinese junk), 485
 Wheat, 225, 521
 Wheelbarrow, 30, 32, 262-3
 Wheeler, Sir R. E. M. (6), 496-7
 Wheels, 435 (b)
 gauge of, 5
 Whip-staff, 636 (j), 637
 White, James (nautical inventor, +1795), 433 (c)
 'White Christians', 508, 538 (c)
 White Rock Cliff. *See* Pai-Shih Yai
 Whiteway, R. S., 514
 'Wickerwork boat' (*lan chow*), 386
 Wilhelm, H. (1), 251, 253
 Wilkinson, W. B. (civil engineer, 1854), 38 (d)
 Willcocks, Sir William (1), 366; (3), 365
 'Willow Pale' (Liu Thiao Pien), 52, 54
 Winch bridge, 208
 Winches
 anchor-, 642, 659
 deck-, 404-5
 halyard, 406, 408, 412
 for raising and lowering rudder, 644
 Winchester, font sculpture of ship at, 637, 655
 Wind-rose, 555, 564 (a)
 Windlass, 185 (c), 190, 191 (a), 193 (g), 347, 349 ff.
 anchor-, 647, 658-9
 on junks, 399, 404, 461, 633
 used in diving, 672
 Windmills, 609 (d), 652 (g)
 Windows, 102-3, 132
 Winds, 476, 548, 550, 555, 562, 582
 Atlantic, 557
 trade-, 509, 511, 513, 547
 and sailing-craft, 588 ff., 591 ff., 598 ff., 604-5, 607-8, 625, 653; dependence on favourable winds, 608, 610
 Windward sailing. *See* Sailing to windward
 Wine, 519, 521
 Winter fodder, 520
 Winterbotham, W. G., 656
 Wismar, seal of, 636
Wo thieh (iron bars, as markers for required depth of annual excavations), 293 (f), 294
 Wolfanger, L. A., 224
 The Wonder of the Capital. *See* *Tu Chhêng Chi Shêng*
 Wood. *See* Timber
 Wooden buildings, 128, 130
 Wooden Dragon (*mu lung*, pile-driver, etc.), 328

904

- 'Wooden-Horse Turks.' *See* Tribal peoples
 Wooden tub (as boat), 384, 386-7
 Woollen cloth, 519
 Wootz steel tools, 372
 Worcester, G. R. G., 383, 403, 409, 419, 424, 431; (1), 398; (2), 430-1; (3), 400, 595, 618, 623, 654; (4), 427
 Worcester, G. R. G. & Sigaut, E., 597
 Words to the Point. *See* *Chih Yen*
 Working drawings, 107 ff., 113
 World War II, 16, 25, 130, 162, 200, 266
 Worsley, P. M. (1), 538
 Wrecks, 275, 354, 410
 on N.W. American shores, 548 (a)
 Wreden, R. (1), 355
 'Wrestling for the Red', 262
 Wright, Frank Lloyd, 67
 Writings of Master Kuan. *See* *Kuan Tzu*
 Wrought iron, 103-4, 193
 Wu Pass, 8
 Wu (State), 8, 15, 27, 31, 86, 272, 449, 671
 naval campaigns, 440, 679-80
 Wang Chün's invasion of, 307, 685, 694
 Wu Chen (Yuan painter), 392 (a)
 Wu-Chha (Tashkurgan), 187
 Wu-Chhang (Udyāna, modern Swat, Chitral, etc.), 197
 Wu Chhih Tao, 28
 Wu Chhüan (rebel commander, +937), 694 (f)
Wu Chiang-chün Thu Shuo (Illustrated Account of the Exploits of General Wu), 155
 Wu-Chiao. *See* Wei-Lü
Wu Ching Tsung Yao (Collection of Military Techniques), 381, 387, 424 ff., 618 (i), 684-5, 689, 691, 693
 Wu Chung (+15th-century naval commander), 491
 Wu Chung (writer, fl. +1558), 313
Wu Chung Shui Li Shu (Water-Conservancy of the Wu District), 324
 Wu Hou (Thang empress). *See* Wu Tsê-Thien
 Wu-kung, 15
Wu-kung chhuan. *See* 'Centipede-boat'
Wu-lan-mu (probably a kind of iron-wood), 644-6
Wu Lei Hsiang Kan Chih (On the Mutual Responses of Things according to their Categories), 664 (e)
 Wu Liang tomb. *See* Tombs
 Wu-Liang Tien (temple hall), 138 (i)
Wu Lin Chiu Shih (Institutions and Customs at Hangchow), 643 (a)
 Wu Lin-Jui (judicial commissioner, fl. +1647), 173
 Wu Ling (Prince of Chao State, r. -325 to -298), 54
 Wu Mên (Meridian Gate), 77
Wu Mu Ching (Manual of the Five (Throws of the) Wooden (Dice)), 82 (b)
Wu Pei Chih (Treatise on Armament Technology), 381, 425, 428, 433, 493, 498, 564 ff., 571, 658, 685

INDEX

- Wu Pei Chih Shêng* (The Best Designs in Armament Technology), 432-3
 Wu Pin (diplomat, +1432), 491
 Wu-shan, 26, 28
 Wu-shao Ling Pass, 17
Wu Shih Wai Kuo Chuan (Records of Foreign Countries in the time of the State of Wu), 381, 449, 602
 Wu Ta-Khun (1), 263
 Wu Tai (period), 48, 106, 140, 282-3, 311, 460, 672
Wu Tai Shih Chi (Historical Records of the Five Dynasties Period). *See* *Hsin Wu Tai Shih*
 Wu-thai Shan, 26, 88, 96, 101, 141, 245
 Wu-thai Shan temples. *See* Temples
 Wu Ti (Chin emperor, r. +266 to +290), 694
 Wu Tsê-Thien (Thang empress, r. +684 to +704), 141 (d)
 Wu Tzu-Hsü (minister of the state of Wu, fl. -530), 272 (b), 440 (d), 678
Wu Tzu-Hsü Shui Chan Fa (Wu Tzu-Hsü's Manual of Naval Tactics), 679
 Wu Tzu-Mu (writer, +1274), 380 (b), 465 (g)
Wu-wei ('No action contrary to Nature'), 17, 234 (a), 235, 249, 656
 Wu-ya-hsien. *See* Five-Ensign Battleships
 Wu Yen (+3rd-century governor of Chien-phing), 694
 Wu Ying (commander, fl. +1690), 155
 Wu-yuan, 52
 See also Chiu-yuan
 Wu-Yüeh Kingdom, 618 (i)
 Wuchiang, bridge at, 174-5
 Wukusun Chung-Tuan (Chin Tartar traveller, +1220), 440
Xavega fishing-boats, 438 (g)
 Ya river rafts, 394
 Ya-an, tomb at, 126
 Ya-Lieh-Khu-Nei-Erh. *See* Alagakkonāra
 al-Ya' qūbī (+889), 465 (i)
 Yachow, 151, 162, 394
 Yachts, 435, 592 (a), 593-4, 611, 616, 697
 Yai-shan, battle of, 667
 Yakushiji pagoda, 130 (b)
 Yalu river, 52
 Yalung Chiang (R.), 386
 Yan Oya (R.), 371-2
 Yang Chen (+15th-century naval commander), 491
 Yang Chhi (engineer, fl. +1510 to +1525), 184
 Yang Chhing (diplomat, +1421), 491
 Yang Chhü canal, 276
 Yang-Chhü Chhiao, 172
 Yang Chiung (writer, +676), 541
 Yang-hsien (modern I-hsing), 165
 Yang Hsiung (mutationist and lexicographer, -53 to +18), 623, 639
 Yang Hsüan (civil engineer, fl. +1448), 322
 Yang Khuan (10), 217
 Yang-kuan, 49

INDEX

905

- Yang Lien-Shêng (11), 244
 Yang Ma-No. *See* Diaz, Emmanuel
 Yang Min (diplomat, + 1412), 491
 Yang Nan-Tang (king of the Ti Chhiang, *d.* + 464), 289 (d)
 Yang-phing Pass, 24
 Yang Phu (general and admiral, *fl.* - 111), 37, 441-2
 Yang Shen (scholar and naturalist in Yunnan, *fl.* + 1500 to + 1540), 201, 605
 Yang Su (Sui engineer and high official, *fl.* + 600), 424 (i), 451, 689-90, 694
 Yang Tê-Wang (Chinese Jesuit, + 1764), 358 (h)
 Yang Ti (Sui emperor, *r.* + 604 to + 617), 31
 Yang *Tu Fu* (Ode on the City of Yang-chou), 604 (h)
 Yang Wu-Lien (Military engineer, *fl.* + 684), 277, 278 (f)
 Yang Yao (revolutionary commander, + 1130), 681 (b), 692
 Yang Yen (engineer, *fl.* - 17), 277, 330-1, 339
 Yangchêng Yen (military engineer, - 200), 45
 Yangchiang. *See* Yeungkong
 Yangchow, 308-9, 314, 453, 466
 Yangtze river, 8, 15-16, 25 ff., 220 ff., 284, 333, 375
 battles on the, 476, 679, 690, 694
 bridges, 161, 170-1, 203
 canals, 271-2, 275, 299, 306-7
 sailing-craft, 386, 390, 397-8, 430, 466, 598, 607, 613, 659
 Yao (legendary emperor), 247-8, 254
 Yao *chou* (waist-boats), 387
 Yao Hsing (Later Chhin emperor, *r.* + 394 to + 416), 307
 Yao-wang *chhuan* (river craft), 618
 Yao Yen (Yuan official), 312 (e)
 Yao Ying (traveller, 1845), 386
 Yarkand, 188
Yathra dhoni, 612
 Yayoi period (Japan), artifacts of, 553
 Yazdani, G. & Binyon, L. (1), 454
 Yeh river, 20-1, 275-6
 Yeh-Hei-Tieh-Erh (Arab architect), 75 (i)
 Yeh Jen-Yang (+ 13th-century inventor), 675
 Yeh-lang, 15, 25
 Yeh Lu Shih (Superintendent of Traffic Police), 255 (a)
 Yeh-yü, 16
 Yeh-yü Pass, 20
 Yehlü To-Chen (ship-builder, + 1048), 460
 Yellow Dragon ships, 690
 The Yellow Emperor's Manual of Corporeal Medicine. *See* *Huang Ti Nei Ching*
 Yellow river, 3, 8, 14, 17, 19, 27, 52, 54, 212, 220 ff., 269 ff., 273 ff., 306 ff., 312 ff., 374
 bridges, 148, 150 (b), 160-1, 189, 193, 207
 charts of, 237 (e)
 diversions of, 279-80
 Han Hsin's crossing of, 387
 restlessness of, 240-1
 Yellow River Dredging Commission, 336
 Yellow Sea, 3, 472-3, 645
 Yellow Turbans, 32
 Yemen, 267 (c), 367
 Yen (State and city), 8-9, 15-16, 28, 54, 562
 Yen An (- 2nd-century statesman), 299 (d)
 Yen Chih-Thui (Sui writer), 64
 Yen Chu (official, *fl.* - 135), 299
 Yen Hai Chih-Chih Shih-Ssu (Imperial Commissariat for the Control and Organisation of Coastal Areas), 476
 Yen Hsü (engineer, *fl.* + 623), 347
 Yen Hui (pupil of Confucius), 64
 Yen Hui (+ 14th-century painter), 624
 Yen-kuan hsien, 353
Yen liu fa (method of measuring flow), 346 (b)
 Yen, Marquis of Yüeh (admiral, *fl.* - 112), 441 (i)
 Yen-mên, 48
 Yen Nien (civil engineer, - 95), 280
 Yen Shêng-Fang (Ming scholar), 245
 Yen Shêng Kung Fu garden, 75 (e)
 Yen Shih-Ku (Thang scholar), 64, 680-1
 Yen Su (writer, + 1026), 584
Yen Tan Tzu (Life of Prince Tan of Yen), 159
Yen Thieh Lun (Discourses on Salt and Iron), 264, 267, 518 (f), 638
Yen Thu Shui I (Post-stations along the Roads and Streams), 360 (e)
 Yen Tun-Chieh (19), 574-5
 Yen-Yo Yü-Lieh Thu Hu, 445
 Yen-Yu Temple, Hanoi. *See* Temples
 Yenchow, 309
 Yetts, W. P. (15), 186
 Yeungkong, sailing ships of, 598
 Yi Hoe (Korean cartographer, + 1402), 499
 Yi Sunsin (Korean admiral, *fl.* + 1592 to + 1598), 528, 683-4, 687-8
 Yin Chhing (eunuch and diplomat, + 1403), 489 (c)
 Yin Chi-Chao (Thang painter), 106
 Yin Chung (Imperial Censor, *c.* - 28), 330
Yin kou (underground canal), 236
 Yin-Yang school, 121, 546 (h)
 Ying. *See* Nan-chün
 Ying (river), 270
 Ying-chhêng-tzu, vaulted tomb at, 167 (g), 180
 Ying *chhuan* (eagle-ship), 425
 Ying-Chou (island), 551-2
 Ying-hsien, wooden tower at, 131
 Ying Shun-Chhen (hydraulic engineer, *fl.* + 1071), 308 (b)
Ying Tsao Fa Shih (Treatise on Architectural Methods), 59, 67-8, 84-5, 87, 91-2, 95, 98, 100, 107 ff., 402, 576
 Ying Tsung (Ming emperor, *r.* + 1436 to + 1450 and + 1457 to + 1464), 491
Ying Yai Shêng Lan (Triumphant Visions of the Ocean Shores), 492-3
 Yodiye-bendi-ela (canal), 373
 Yohsu, Korean turtle-ship at, 684
 Yoyang, 222
 Ypres, double slipway at, 365
 Ysbrants Ides (Russian ambassador, + 1693), 56

906

INDEX

- Yü (stasis), 268
 Yu. *See* Post-offices
 Yü the Great (legendary irrigation culture-hero and ruler), 213, 229, 233, 247 ff., 260, 263, 265, 270, 280, 296, 343
 Yü of the Hsia Controlling the Waters (painting), 341
 Yü Chê-Tê (1), 181
 Yü Chen (15th-century naval physician), 491 (h)
 Yü Chêng-Hsieh (writer on waterways, 1832), 326
 Yü *chha* ('fish forks', offensive weapon), 692
 Yü Chhêng-Lung (dyke-builder, fl. +1694), 314 (f)
 Yü-Chhuan Ssu (Jade Springs Temple), 141
 Yü *Chi Thu* (Map of the Tracks of Yü the Great), 568
 Yü Hao (master-builder, fl. +965 to +995), 82 ff., 127 (c), 128 (d), 141
 Yü Ho (Imperial River), 313, 318
 Yu *Hsien Shih* (Poem of the Wandering Hsien), 639
 Yü Hsü (engineer, fl. +110 to +136), 26
 Yü Huan (writer, c. +264), 34
 'Yü-Huang' (flag-ship of the Wu), 440 (d)
 Yü Kung, chapter of the *Shu Ching*, q.v.
 Yü *Kung Chui Chih* (A Few Points in the Vast Subject of the 'Tribute of Yü'), 326
 Yü-lin, 31, 49
 Yü Lin Thu ('Fish-Scale Maps'), 332 (d)
 Yü-mên-kuan, 18, 49
 Yü Mêng-Wei (engineer, +868), 305
 Yü Ming-Chhien (1), 166
 Yü-ni, 17-18, 28
 Yü *Phien* (Jade Page Dictionary), 600, 644, 657
 Yü Po-Sêng (late +13th-century poet), 640
 Yü Shan (+4th-century poet), 604 (h)
 Yü-Shih Ta-Fu (Grand Secretary, or Minister of Works), 30
 Yü Ta-Niang, ships of, 452
 Yü-Tai Chhiao. *See* Jade Girdle Bridge
 Yü-thai, 327
 Yu thing. *See* Patrol boats
 Yü *Ti Tsung Thu* (General World Atlas), 499
 Yu *ting* (sea-anchors), 659
 Yü Tsui. *See* Fish Snout
 Yü Tzu-Chün (governor of Sian, c. +1477), 335, 525
 Yü Wang Kung. *See* Temples
 Yu-Yang *Tsa Tsu* (Miscellany of the Yu-Yang Mountain Cave), 494, 541
 Yuan (dynasty), 227, 240, 279, 297, 311, 314, 360, 476, 687
 artists, 112
 building, 85, 87, 89, 95, 140
 Grand Canal, 358-9, 377, 479 (f)
 Great Wall, 50
 hydraulic engineering, 282 ff.; 296, 307, 312, 317, 328, 344
 navigation, 382, 563, 569
 navy, 477
 paintings, 647
 porcelain, 497
 post-station system, 36
 ships, 415, 420, 621
 town-planning, 75
 Yuan Chhang (Prince of the Northern Wei, c. +512), 161 (d)
 Yuan *Chien Lei Han* encyclopaedia, 678
 Yuan *Ching Shih Ta Tien* (Institutions of the Yuan Dynasty), 478
 Yuan *Hai Yün Chih* (A Sketch of Sea-Transport during the Yuan), 478
 Yuan-ling (old Kuei-yang), 27
 Yuan Ming Yuan summer palace, 81, 86
 Yuan *Nei Fu Kung Tien Chih Tso* (Regulations for (Construction) Work on Palaces and Public Buildings, authorised by the Imperial Directorate of Architecture), 85
 Yuan Shao (general, fl. +204), 281
 Yuan *Shih* (History of the Yuan Dynasty), 355, 585
 Yuan *Shu Tsa Chi* (Records of the Seat of Government at Yuan-phing), 87
 Yuan Ti (Liang emperor, r. +549 to +555), 81
 Yuan-yang-chiang *chhuan* ('Mandarin-duck rowed assault boat'), 426
 Yuan *Yeh* (On the Making of Gardens), 75
 Yüeh navy, 440 (d)
 Yüeh peoples. *See* Tribal peoples
 Yüeh rebellion, 442
 Yüeh (river), 354
 Yüeh (State), 442, 670
 campaigns, 679 ff.
 Yüeh-chhêng Ling (hills), 300
 Yüeh-chih. *See* Indo-Scythians
 Yüeh *Chüeh Shu* (Lost Records of the State of Yüeh), 390 (i), 678
 Yüeh-han railway, 15
 Yüeh-sui, 25, 31
Yuktikalpataru (Book of Shipping), 402 (f)
 Yule, Sir Henry, (2), 361
 Yuloh (self-feathering propulsion oar), 397-8, 406, 419, 423, 468, 470, 621, 622 ff., 626, 649, 692, 696
 technical terms, 622-3
 Yün-kang cave-temples, 101, 138
 Yün *Lu Man Chhao* (Random Jottings at Yün-lu), 631
 Yung, 15
 Yung-chhang, 17, 25
 Yung Chi Chhü, 310
 Yung-Kuo Ssu. *See* Temples
 Yung-Ning Ssu. *See* Temples
 Yung Shih (Superintendent of Waterways Police), 255 (a), 267
 Yung *tao* (raised causeways), 7, 19
 Yung-Thung Chhiao, 181-2
 Yungpei, 200
 Yungting river, 183
 Yunnan, 15, 19, 25, 27, 31
 bridges, 151, 163-4, 185, 189, 198 ff., 210
 buildings, 133
 dwelling-pits, 121
 irrigation, 284, 297, 375

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-07060-7 - Science and Civilisation in China: Physics and Physical Technology: Part III:

Civil Engineering and Nautics

Joseph Needham, Wang Ling and Lu Gwei-Djen

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

907

- Yuwên Khai (chief engineer of the Sui), 75 (j), 307, 309
- Zafār, 490, 530
- Zalej (or Zanej) Islands, 496
- Zambesi river, 494, 498, 506
- Zanguebar coast, 490, 495
- al-Zanj, 504, 508, 514
- Zanzibar, 486, 501, 511
- al-Zarqālī, Abū Ishāq (astronomer, *c.* +1070), 580–1
- Zaru (ship), 469
- Zayton (Chhüanchow), 466, 469, 471, 486
twin pagodas at, 139
- Zeachen (Dutch navigator, *fl.* +1618 to +1627), 536
- Zedelghem, font sculpture of ship at, 637
- Ziggurat, 129
- Zimbabwe, archaeological finds at, 497 (h)
- Zonca, Vittorio (+1607), 351, 357, 365
- de Zurara, Gomes Eanes (+16th-century chronicler), 517, 529
- Zuyder Zee, 357